CANADIAN ISSUES

Bibliography for Canadian Studies:
Present Trends and Future Needs

Bibliographie pour les Etudes Canadiennes:
situation actuelle et besoins futurs

A Publication of
The Association for Canadian Studies / L'Association des Etudes Canadiennes
VOLUME IV, 1982

CANADIAN ISSUES

A Publication of The Association for Canadian Studies / L'Association des Etudes Canadiennes
VOLUME IV, 1982

BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR CANADIAN STUDIES: PRESENT TRENDS AND FUTURE NEEDS

BIBLIOGRAPHIE POUR LES ETUDES CANADIENNES: SITUATION ACTUELLE ET BESOINS FUTURS

SOME OF THE DELEGATES

FROM ELEVEN NATIONS ATTENDING THE CONFERENCE

From left to right, FRONT ROW: Jørn Carlsen, Denmark; James Sturges, England; Peter Crabb, Australia; Luca Codignola, Italy; Francess Halpenny, Canada; Francesco Giacobelli, Italy; Robert Schultz, Australia.

SECOND ROW: Rainer-Olaf Schultze, West Germany; Peter Lyon, England; Kazuo Kimura, Japan; Pierre Guillaume, France; Guy Sylvestre, Canada; Pierre George, France.

BACK ROW: Ged Martin, Ireland; Michael Hellyer, Canada House, London, England; Anne Piternick, Canada; James Page, Canada.

Bibliography for Canadian Studies: Present Trends and Future Needs

Bibliographie pour les Etudes Canadiennes: situation actuelle et besoins futurs

---

PROCEEDINGS OF A CONFERENCE HELD
AT DALHOUSIE UNIVERSITY,
HALIFAX, N.S., ON JUNE 1 & 2, 1981

edited by
Anne B. Piternick

SPONSORED BY
The Association for Canadian Studies
L'Association des Etudes Canadiennes

ORGANIZED BY
The National Library Advisory Board's Committee on Bibliography and Information Services for the Social Sciences and Humanities
Comité de la Bibliographie et des Services d'Information pour les Sciences humaines du Conseil consultatif de la Bibliothèque nationale

CANADIAN ISSUES

ISSN 0318-8442 ISBN 919363-07-5

Canadian Issues is a publication of The Association for Canadian Studies/L'Association des Etudes Canadiennes. Designed as an annual publication, *Canadian Issues* features papers and proceedings from the Association's national conferences. Typically these events are thematic congresses which address topics of importance to the Canadian studies community.

Canadian Issues is available free to members of The Association for Canadian Studies. Individual copies of the publication are available to non-members for $22.00 (Canadian). To become a member of the ACS/AEC or to purchase copies of this issue, please write to The Association for Canadian Studies, 1750 Finch Avenue East, Willowdale, Ontario, M2J 2X5.

In addition to receiving free copies of *Canadian Issues,* members of the ACS/AES also receive the ACS/AEC quarterly *Newsletter* which contains information of interests to Canadianists. Members are entitled, as well, to reduced rates for the *Journal of Canadian Studies,* lower registration fees for Association conferences and workshops and full voting privileges within the organization.

This publication was greatly assisted by the University of Toronto Press. Design and production assistance have been provided by Harold Kurschenska. Editorial assistance was provided by William Linge, also of the University of Toronto Press.

CONTENTS

FOREWORD - *Guy Sylvestre* vii
PREFACE - *James E. Page* viii
INTRODUCTION - *Anne B. Piternick* ix
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS xii

I. SUMMARY OF DEVELOPMENTS IN CANADIAN SUBJECT AND AREA BIBLIOGRAPHY SINCE 1974 – *Lillian M. Rider* 1

II. SPECIFIC AREAS OMITTED AT THE 1974 CONFERENCE 29
  NATIVE STUDIES - *Harvey McCue* 30
  ETHNIC STUDIES - *Judy Young* 38
  WOMEN'S STUDIES - *Veronica Strong-Boag* 48
  ARCHIVES - *Marcel Caya* 58
  NON-BOOK MATERIALS - *Lorelei Rogers* 75

III. DEVELOPMENTS IN AUTOMATED INFORMATION SYSTEMS ON A NATION-WIDE SCALE 83
  DEVELOPMENTS TOWARDS AN AUTOMATED BIBLIOGRAPHIC NETWORK - *Basil Stuart-Stubbs* 84
  BIBLIOGRAPHIC AND NON-BIBLIOGRAPHIC DATA BASES IN CANADA - *Sue Bishop* 97

IV. BRIEF NOTES ON SOME CANADIAN DATA BASES 107
  THE CANADIAN REGISTER OF RESEARCH AND RESEARCHERS IN THE SOCIAL SCIENCES - *S. Paula Mitchell* 108
  MICROLOG - *Catherine Pross* 112
  THE SPORT DATA BASE - *Gilles Chiasson* 114

V. RESOURCE COLLECTIONS FOR CANADIAN STUDIES: PROJECTS IN CANADA WHICH PROVIDE ACCESS 117
  LA CONTRIBUTION DE LA BIBLIOTHEQUE NATIONALE DU QUEBEC - *Lise Lavigne* 118
  CANADIANA 1867-1900: MONOGRAPHIES - *Michel Thériault* 124
  THE CANADIAN INSTITUTE FOR HISTORICAL MICROREPRODUCTIONS: OBJECTIVES - METHODOLOGIES - *Ernest B. Ingles and Robert Montague* 137

VI. RESOURCE COLLECTIONS ABROAD AND ACCESS TO THEM 147
BIBLIOGRAPHIC RESOURCES FOR CANADIAN STUDIES IN AUSTRALIA
- *Peter Crabb* 148
A VIEW FROM DENMARK - *Jørn Carlsen* 153
SUGGESTIONS POUR UNE RELATION DE RECIPROCITE ENTRE LES
SERVICES DE DOUCMENTATION CANADIENS ET FRANÇAIS
- *Pierre George* 154
RESOURCE COLLECTIONS IN THE UNITED KINGDOM
- *Donald Simpson* 156
CANADIAN STUDIES RESOURCE COLLECTIONS IN THE UNITED STATES:
AN INTRODUCTION TO THE MAJOR LIBRARIES
- *Ronald D. Tallman* 159

VII. EPILOGUE: HOW TO COMPILE A BIBLIOGRAPHY 165
THE COMPILATION OF SYSTEMATIC BIBLIOGRAPHIES
A BACKGROUND PAPER - *Gloria M. Strathern* 166
BIBLIOGRAPHIC REPRESENTATION AND ORGANIZATION
- *Nancy J. Williamson* 172

RECOMMENDATIONS APPROVED BY THE CONFERENCE 190

FOREWORD

THIS CONFERENCE was a joint endeavour of the Committee on Bibliography and Information Services for the Social Sciences and Humanities/Comité de la Bibliographie et des Services d'Information en Sciences Humaines (CBISSSH/CBSISH) and the Association for Canadian Studies/l'Association des Etudes Canadiennes (ACS/AEC). The Committee was responsible for developing the programme, inviting the speakers and arranging for demonstrations and exhibits, and its parent body, the National Library, has provided funds to publish these Proceedings. The Association accepted the Conference as its annual meeting programme, obtained funding for the speakers and for the international delegates, and undertook responsibility for the physical and social arrangements. The experience of both groups bodes well for their continued cooperation in advancing Canadian Studies at home and abroad.

A major goal of both the Committee and the Association in organizing the Conference was to emphasize the importance of bibliography as an essential part of research in Canadian Studies. On a more practical level, we hope that the papers reproduced here will result in better use of the bibliographies and bibliographic services already available to us, and will encourage librarians and researchers – alone or in collaboration – to set to work to fill some of the gaps which have been identified in the bibliographic framework. We are grateful to our contributors whose efforts in describing "current trends and future needs" have provided us with a sound basis for development.

The Conference in plenary session made a number of recommendations to funding and controlling bodies which, I am sure, will receive the attention they deserve.

GUY SYLVESTRE, *National Librarian*

PREFACE

IT IS CRUCIAL, for the development of Canadian Studies in schools, colleges and universities, that Canadian educational institutions devote resources adequate to the development of balanced and appropriate Canadian collections. The wealth and diversity of the materials available, and the mechanisms available to learn about these resources, are illustrated in these pages.

The Association for Canadian Studies joined with the Committee on Bibliography and Information Services for the Social Science and Humanities of the National Library Advisory Board to organize a special conference on "Bibliography for Canadian Studies: Present Trends and Future Needs" because of our belief that Canadianists and bibliographers can do much working together to enhance Canadian Studies. The proceedings of this conference are being published by the Association for Canadian Studies with the support of the National Library as a contribution to general knowledge of bibliography and specific developments in the field. Special attention has been given to developments in automated information systems on a nation-wide scale and special resource collections for Canadian Studies both at home and abroad.

The Association is pleased to have had the opportunity to work with Canadian librarians on the meeting and the publication of these conference papers. It is our hope that there will be extensive and long-term cooperation between Canadianists in academe and in our library systems.

JAMES E. PAGE
President,
The Association for Canadian Studies/L'Association des Etudes Canadiennes
President,
International Council for Canadian Studies/Conseil International des Etudes Canadiennes

INTRODUCTION

In 1974, a National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography was held at the University of British Columbia. The aim of the Conference was to assess the adequacy of the bibliographic control of both source documents for the study of Canada and the publications of Canadian writers and researchers. A major outcome of the Conference was the establishment by the National Library Advisory Board in 1975 of the Committee on Bibliographical Services for Canada – now the Committee on Bibliography and Information Services for the Social Sciences and Humanities. One of the chief objectives of the Committee since its inception has been to identify needs and priorities for the support of bibliographical activities in Canada, and this Conference stands as a tangible effort to assess progress since 1974, identify current and continuing needs, and advise the Canadian Studies community of trends and developments in bibliographical activity on a national scale. Another objective has been to make recommendations for support of bibliographical activities to funding bodies; the announcement that the Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada had established a programme of funding for support of research tools for Canadian Studies, including bibliographies, indexes and guides to archives, came as a fitting end to the Conference sessions.

Seven years have now elapsed since the 1974 Conference. Lillian Rider undertook the mammoth task of surveying developments to date in the subjects and areas covered in 1974, and it is encouraging to note from her extensive report that advances have been made in some areas. Since 1974 also, the scope of "Canadian Studies" has become more clearly defined, and it was felt appropriate at this Conference to assess the state of bibliography in some sub-fields of Canadian Studies which were not covered earlier – Native Studies, Ethnic Studies and Women's Studies. It has also become clear that bibliographic control of and access to non-print sources is a pressing need for Canadian Studies; hence the commissioning of papers on Archives and Non-Book Materials.

Since 1974, some major developments have taken place in Canada towards the establishment of two complementary networks on a nation-wide scale: a bibliographic network and a resource network. The bibliographic network will link machine-readable data bases containing records of the holdings of Canadian libraries; the resource network will ensure that, as far as possible, library resources required for research and teaching are acquired and preserved in Canada, that they can be located through the bibliographic network, and that copies can be made available through loan or other means when required. The development of these networks was promulgated by the National Librarian in his 1979 report to the Secretary of State on *The Future of the National Library of Canada*. The National

Library Advisory Board recently set up two committees, paralleling the CBISSSH, to advise on network development.

It is further intended that the bibliographic network will link with other bibliographic and non-bibliographic data bases, providing access to abstracting and indexing services and other reference sources in machine-readable form. The National Library already mounts some Canadian data bases of interest to workers in the social sciences and humanities on the CAN/OLE system. The Committee and the Association both felt it important that the scholarly and research communities be apprised of the developments and be encouraged to discuss the impact of electronic networks on Canadian research.

Several developments have recently taken place which have placed particular emphasis on the retrospective bibliography of Canadiana and the location of copies of the materials so described. The Bibliothèque nationale du Québec has issued a catalogue of its holdings of Laurentiana published before 1821, and is in the process of issuing a bibliography of Quebec imprints and works about Quebec to 1967 – after which the current *Bibliographie du Québec* takes over. This bibliography includes locations of copies. The National Library of Canada has begun to issue in microfiche form a preliminary edition of a bibliography of Canadiana from 1867 to 1900, including locations of copies. Finally, the Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions, which was established with funding from the Canada Council, is in the process of creating a master bibliography of Canadian materials published to 1900, and preparing a microfilm master of each work so identified, so that libraries and researchers will be able to purchase the whole set or single works as required. To fully exploit the benefits of these efforts, it was felt important that the scholarly community be made aware of their scope and implications.

We were delighted to have present at the Conference a number of delegates from Canadian Studies organizations and centres outside Canada. One of the Conference sessions was devoted to reports from the delegates on resource collections outside Canada and access to them. Several delegates prepared statements for publication, and these are presented here.

At the most practical level, one aim of the Conference was to encourage those engaged in scholarship and research to compile bibliographies in their areas of expertise and to encourage their students to do so. The Committee in particular has been concerned that efforts in this area are sometimes wasted because of a lack of training in bibliographic compilation. As an "epilogue" to the Conference proper, a workshop was mounted to advise scholars on bibliographic compilation. The two papers which formed the core of the workshop will be found in these *Proceedings*.

The Committee on Bibliography and Information Services in the Social Sciences and Humanities will continue its work towards an adequate bibliographic and information services infrastructure for research and communication in Canadian Studies and for the social sciences and humanities in Canada. In cooperation with the Committees working on the bibliographic and resource networks, we shall try to ensure that the needs of scholars are met, whether these concern the necessity for identifying and gaining access to source documents in a specific field, obtaining specialized information services, ensuring that their own work is announced and its results available to others in the field, or ensuring that they have access to data bases and services originating outside Canada which are of interest to their work. In all of this, we shall work closely with the Association of Canadian Studies and with the scholarly community as a whole. We look forward to interaction and cooperation with all those working in the field of Canadian Studies in pursuing these objectives.

ANNE B. PITERNICK, *Editor*
Chair, CBISSSH,
Professor, School of Librarianship, University of British Columbia

NOTE: The Committee may be contacted at:
The National Library of Canada
395 Wellington Street
Ottawa, Ontario (Canada)
K1A 0N4

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

THE CONFERENCE ORGANIZERS express their thanks to the following organizations and individuals who helped to make the Conference a success: The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council for conference funding; The Department of External Affairs for financial aid to assist the participation of the delegates from outside Canada; The National Library of Canada, for funding the participation of CBISSSH members, and guaranteeing the publication of these Proceedings; Dr. Norman Horrocks, Director of the School of Library Science, Dalhousie University, for organizing the physical arrangements and extending the hospitality of the School; The Conference Speakers, for their response to the invitation to provide papers; The following, who acted as Chairmen of the plenary sessions: Norman Horrocks; R. Brian Land, Legislative Librarian of Ontario; Réal Bosa, Coordonnateur des Services publiques, Bibliothèque Nationale du Québec; Hans Möller, Director of the Graduate School of Library Science, McGill University; Francess G. Halpenny, Chairman of the National Library Advisory Board; General Editor of the *Dictionary of Canadian Biography;* Associate Editor (Academic), University of Toronto Press. The Association is particularly indebted to the Secretary of State of Canada for the Ministry's encouragement and support.

I

SUMMARY OF DEVELOPMENTS IN CANADIAN SUBJECT AND AREA BIBLIOGRAPHY SINCE 1974

SUMMARY OF DEVELOPMENTS IN CANADIAN SUBJECT AND AREA BIBLIOGRAPHY SINCE 1974

LILLIAN M. RIDER,
Reference Librarian
McLennan Library, McGill University
3459 McTavish Street, Montreal, Quebec H3A 1Y1

June 1981

OUTLINE

INTRODUCTION

AREAS
CANADA
ATLANTIC PROVINCES:
Newfoundland; Prince Edward Island; Nova Scotia; New Brunswick
QUEBEC
ONTARIO
THE WEST:
Manitoba; Saskatchewan; Alberta; British Columbia
THE NORTH

SUBJECTS
THE ARTS:
Children's Literature; Fine Arts and Architecture; Linguistics; Literature; Translation; Music
THE SOCIAL SCIENCES:
Anthropology, Sociology & Geography; Education; History; Law; Politics, Economics & Business; Maps
THE SCIENCES:
Science and Technology

CONCLUSION

NOTE

WORKS CITED

WORKS CONSULTED

INTRODUCTION

SEVEN YEARS AGO, on the other side of the country, the National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography appraised the state of our bibliography and articulated its needs. Sixty-two recommendations were passed by the Conference and well over half of these specified requirements concerned with national, provincial or subject bibliography. These recommendations voiced four major needs; that of basic retrospective bibliographies; of supplements, or revisions, or improvements to existing bibliographies; of current bibliographies; and of form bibliographies of specific types of materials, such as periodicals, newspapers, periodical articles, or government publications. These needs encompass almost all aspects of bibliography that would be ideal for any region or subject at any time, but they also provide a framework within which to consider the developments in Canadian bibliography since the Vancouver Conference.

The purpose of this paper is to summarize the bibliographic developments since 1974 within geographic and subject categories. Mention is made of some of the major new bibliographies and examples of the kinds of bibliographies which have appeared, as well as any disappointing events which have occurred. These summaries are by no means comprehensive but attempt to present some idea of what has been happening. All types of published bibliographies, regardless of their level of sophistication, have been considered on condition that they provide access to Canadian materials. Those specific subjects (native studies, ethnic studies and women's studies) and forms of materials (archives, and non-book materials) which will be dealt with elsewhere in these proceedings are not discussed, and automated information networks and bibliographic data bases are not emphasized. The views expressed in this paper are those of the author and differences of opinion are encouraged as are other comments.

AREAS

CANADA

The bibliography on Canada as a whole has its strengths and its weaknesses. It is difficult to generalize about its progress, but it does seem to be edging forward.

The single most significant achievement is the start of distribution of our long-awaited retrospective national bibliography, *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographs* (1980-). As this will be described at greater length later in the conference, suffice it to say here that it is truly a remarkable accomplishment. Our current national bibliography, *Canadiana* (1950-), has undergone a variety of changes and improvements in recent years. The 1981 printed issues sport a new cover design, new type face and a new three-column-per-page format. The content, catalogued according to the second edition of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR 2), is now presented in only two parts – "Canadian Imprints" and "Foreign Imprints of Canadian Association" – with access provided by five indexes: author/title/series, English subject headings, French subject headings, International Standard Book Number (ISBN) and International Standard Serial Number (ISSN). Cataloguing-in-

Publication (CIP) data, which has been included since 1976, provides pre-publication information. *Canadiana (Microfiche),* which has been available since 1978, can be distributed considerably sooner than the printed version. The situation with *Canadiana,* however, is still less than ideal. The currency of the material appearing in the monthly issues still needs improvement. The variety of indexes and sections over the years makes its use not only confusing but also tedious. The forthcoming cumulation, *Canadiana 1973-1980 (Microfiche)* will undoubtedly be a help.

The basic guide for bibliographies as well as other reference works continues to be Dorothy Ryder's *Canadian Reference Sources* (1973). It has been kept current by its *Supplement* (1975) and annual updates in the August issue of *Canadian Library Journal.* A new edition is expected in the very near future. *Canadian Selection: Books and Periodicals for Libraries* (1978), compiled by Edith Jarvi, Isabel McLean and Catherine MacKenzie, is a sorely needed comprehensive guide for the selection and acquisition of Canadian books and periodicals and is also invaluable for collection development. Its *1977-1979 Supplement,* compiled by Isabel McLean with the assistance of Edith Jarvi appeared in 1980. Two other selection guides, much more modest in scale but useful nonetheless for their brevity and timeliness, are *Canadian Studies 1981* (formerly *Buyers' Guide to Canadian Titles*), published by the Canadian Book Publishers' Council and the Association of Canadian Publishers, and *Guide to Selecting Canadian Materials* (3d ed., 1981) published by the Canadian Book Information Centre. *CM: Canadian Materials* (1971-), with its critical annotations of print and non-print materials, is geared primarily to schools. It is, nevertheless, a basic current selection tool. Although it began publication as an annual prior to 1974, it has since come into its own as a quarterly.

The *Catalogue of the Public Archives Library* (1979) represents the most comprehensive general Canadian bibliography to be published since 1974. *Canada Since 1867: A Bibliographical Guide* (2d ed., 1977) edited by J.L. Granatstein and Paul Stevens, is another general Canadian bibliography. Although covering a restricted time period, it emphasizes recent scholarship. The *Bibliografía de historia de América,* compiled by Irma Larouche, is the National Library's semi-annual contribution to the *Revista de historia de América* and has been issued as a separate publication since 1977. This is a somewhat novel development making this valuable current bibliography much more accessible.

Canadian Books in Print (1967-), both the *Author and Title Index* and the *Subject Index,* has continued regular publication during the time period under consideration. This is an accomplishment which should not be taken for granted. Since 1980 the *Author and Title Index* has been issued quarterly – the hard copy volume with three microfiche supplements in April, July and October. Another work which has continued publication at regular intervals is the *Dictionary of Canadian Biography* (1966-). Although not strictly speaking a bibliography, the quantity and quality of its bibliographic material qualifies it for consideration. The continued regular publication of both these works helps restore one's faith in the whole bibliographical process.

Government publications of all levels of government often cause bibliographic headaches. A major new antidote in this field is Micromedia's monthly *Microlog Index,* an index to federal, provincial and some municipal government publications as well as report literature. *Microlog Index,* which began in 1979, supersedes *ProFile Index* (vol. 1-6, 1973-78), which contained provincial and municipal publications; *Publicat Index* (vol. 1-2, 1977-78), which contained federal publications; and *Urban Canada/Canada urbain* (vol. 1-2, 1977-78). This might be termed a bibliographic by-product as it is basically an index to Micromedia's microfiche collections. Nevertheless, it serves as a comprehensive addition to Canadian bibliography and has great possibilities for the future. Catherine and Paul Pross's *Guide to the Identification and Acquisition of Canadian Provincial Government Publications* (1977) is a clear, practical and much needed aid to unravelling the intricacies of such publications.

Not to be lulled into complacency, mention must also be made of disappointing developments. Since 1979, the *Government of Canada Publications* has been published quarterly rather than monthly. At the same time, its "Index to Periodicals", which had been included since 1963, ceased. An even more serious loss is the *Canadian Serials Directory* which ceased with its second edition in 1977.

On a brighter note though, Canadian union lists seem to be in a healthier state than some other forms of bibliography. There is the National Library's *Union List of Canadian Newspapers Held by Canadian Libraries* (1977), and *Union List of Serials in the Social Sciences and Humanities Held by Canadian Libraries* (1980-). This latter, issued on microfiche, although not exclusively Canadian in content, contains some Canadian serials and we can hope, will eventually become comprehensive in its Canadian coverage. The Canada Institute for Scientific and Technical Information's *Union List of Scientific Serials in Canadian Libraries* (8th ed., 1979) provides good coverage for Canadian scientific titles. The Public Archives of Canada's *Union List of Manuscripts in Canadian Repositories* (Rev. ed., 1975), an invaluable finding aid, now has two supplements (1976 and 1979).

Newspaper, periodical, and collections indexes have had their ups and downs. The *Canadian News Index* (formerly the *Canadian Newspaper Index*) has been published since 1977. Its representative coverage of newspapers fills a serious gap in our bibliography. The *Canadian Book Review Annual,* covering publications since 1975, is also a laudable achievement. A sad note, however, is the cessation of the *Canadian Essay and Literature Index* (1973-1975) after only three years of publication. This title, with its companion volume, *Canadian Essays and Collections Index 1971-72,* published in 1976, leaves us with only five years of this kind of index. *The Canadian Periodical Index* (1938/47-) continues to be the old stand-by and definitely should not be overlooked. In 1975, it instituted an active programme of increasing the number of titles indexed, and new titles are added each year or two. This is indeed an accomplishment, and a most necessary one.

A new gem among Canadian bibliographies, which stands in a category all by itself, is Dorothy Ryder's *Checklist of Canadian Directories 1790-1950* (1979). Not only does this record the existence of specific city directories but it also provides their library locations.

ATLANTIC PROVINCES

Developments in the bibliography of the Atlantic Provinces have been substantial and varied. "Atlantic Canada," the January 1977 issue of *Communiqué: Canadian Studies*, edited by Gerald Fisher, provides a basic bibliography of the whole region. "Bibliography/Bibliographie: Recent Publications Relating to the History of the Atlantic Region," appearing in the semi-annual issues of *Acadiensis* since 1975, is a significant new current bibliography.

Newfoundland

The *List of Publications Offered by the Government of Newfoundland and Labrador* experienced a short life from 1974 to 1977. Two general bibliographies of the province which have appeared are Maurice Sterns, Philip Hiscock and Bruce Daley's *Newfoundland and Labrador: Social Science Research* (1975) and Alison Kemshead's *Newfoundland: A Bibliography of Social, Economic and Political Conditions* (1980).

Prince Edward Island

Prince Edward Island's government publications have been recorded in the Island Information Service's monthly *Provincial Government Publications Checklist* since 1976. Alison Kemshead's *Prince Edward Island: A Bibliography of Social, Economic and Political Conditions* (1980) and Harry Baglole's *Exploring Island History* (1977), which is a resource guide for teachers, provide two quite different approaches to the subject.

Nova Scotia

Publications of the Province of Nova Scotia Quarterly Checklist, issued since 1981, updates the annual which has appeared since 1968. Two provincial bibliographies have been compiled by Robert Vaison, *Studying Nova Scotia* (1974) and *Nova Scotia Past and Present* (1976). Newspaper publication has been documented extensively in Gertrude Tratt's *Survey and Listing of Nova Scotia's Newspapers 1752-1957* (1979). Thomas Vincent's *Historical Directory of Nova Scotia Newspapers and Journals before Confederation* (1977) is a handy checklist with just the basic details. More specialized bibliographies which have been published include Brian Tennyson's *Cape Breton: A Bibliography* (1978) and Allan Marble's *Catalogue of Published Genealogies of Nova Scotia Families* (1979).

New Brunswick

A Supplement to Hugh Taylor's *New Brunswick History: A Checklist of Secondary Sources* was compiled by Eric Swanick in 1974, and another supplement is in progress. Eric Swanick has also compiled *New Brunswick Regional Development During the 60's and the 70's* (1979) as one of the Vance Bibliographies' Public Administration Series.

QUEBEC

Quebec bibliography has a number of exemplary accomplishments to report. The Bibliothèque national du Québec's most notable recent publications include the *Bibliographie de bibliographies québécoises* (1979 and supplement, 1980); *Laurentiana paru avant 1821* (1976), recording what is known as "les livres anciens;" the *Bibliographie* *du Québec, 1821-1967* (1980-), known as "la retrospective," which is being issued in installments; and Suzanne Lauzier and Normand Cormier's *Les ouvrages de référence du Québec: Supplément 1967-1974* (1975).

The activities of the Bibliothèque nationale du Québec do not appear to have overshadowed or deterred other bibliographic endeavours in the province. Additional volumes of André Beaulieu and Jean Hamelin's exhaustive *La presse québécoise des origines à nos jours* (2d ed., 1973-), a chronological record and description of the Quebec newspaper and periodical press, continue to appear at two year intervals.

Regional and local bibliographies have also been produced at a remarkable rate. The importance of Quebec's rivers is underlined, perhaps, by Jean-Pierre St. Amour's *L'Outaouais québécois* (1978); Henri Demers's *Le St. Laurent* (1979); Université du Québec à Trois-Rivières Bibliothèque's *Catalogue collectif régional: Mauricie et centre du Québec* (1977-); and René Hardy, Guy Trépanier and Jacques Belleau's *La Mauricie et les Bois-Francs* (1977). In addition there has been Rachel Tawell and Renée Beaumont-Moisan's *L'Ile d'Anticosti* (1975); Benoit-Beaudry Gourd's *Bibliographie de l'Abitibi-Temiscamingue* (1973, with 1975, 1977 and 1979 supplements); and the Université de Sherbrooke's *Bibliographie d'histoire des Cantons de l'Est* (1975).

ONTARIO

The plight of Ontario's bibliography was revealed dramatically at the National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography. This situation was deplored and something has been done about it. Olga Bishop's two volume *Bibliography of Ontario History, 1867-1976* (1980) is a massive general bibliography of the province. Also her *Publications of the Government of Ontario 1867-1900* (1976) and Hazel MacTaggart and Kenneth Sundquist's *Publications of the Government of Ontario, 1956-1971* (1975) complete the post-Confederation record of Ontario's government publications. There is also Susan Waintman and Ana Tampold's *Ontario Royal Commissions and Commissions of Inquiry 1867-1978* (1980).

The *Annual Bibliography of Ontario History: 1980,* issued as a separate publication continuing the "Book Notes" in the journal, *Ontario History,* provides a current bibliography. Local histories of the province appear to be under control with William Morley's *Ontario and the Canadian North* (1978), the final volume of the series "Canadian Local Histories to 1950," and Barbara Aitken's *Local Histories of Ontario Municipalities, 1951-1977* (1978).

Impressive progress has certainly been made in Ontario.

THE WEST

The bibliography of the four western provinces is building on the strength of a good solid base. Provincial government publications are being listed regularly and regional or local bibliographies are making their appearance.

Western Canada Since 1870 (1978) by Alan Artibise serves as a companion volume to Bruce Peel's *Bibliography of the Prairie Provinces to 1953* (2d ed., 1973) as it contains more recently published material. Also its geographic base is broader, including all of Alberta and British Columbia.

Manitoba

Manitoba's bibliographic production is holding its own. John Tooth's ***Looking for Manitoba Government Publications*** (1978) is an extensive guide. A few examples of local history and regional bibliographies include D.J. Teillet's ***A Northern Manitoba Bibliography*** (1979); the Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba's ***Local History in Manitoba*** (1976); and Louise Sloane, Janette Roseneder and Marilyn Hernandez's ***Winnipeg: A Centennial Bibliography*** (1974).

Saskatchewan

Saskatchewan's chief bibliographic accomplishment is Ved Arora's ***Saskatchewan Bibliography*** (1980). There is also the ***Checklist of Saskatchewan Government Publications, 1976-*** , and regional works such as the University of Saskatchewan's Institute for Northern Studies's ***Northern Saskatchewan Bibliography*** (1975).

Alberta

Alberta's accomplishments in the bibliographic field are on the increase. To record its government publications, the quarterly, ***Publications Catalogue***, with annual cumulations, began in 1974, and has appeared regularly since 1976. Christine Backhaus's ***Royal Commissions and Commissions of Inquiry in Alberta, 1905-1976*** (1977) is a welcome addition.

Certain areas of the province and specific topics have been dealt with, as in P.S. Ross and Partners's ***The Economy of Northern Alberta*** (1975); Ian F. Dew's ***Bibliography of Material Relating to Southern Alberta Published to 1970*** (1975); ***Alberta's Local Histories in the Historical Resources Library*** (4th ed., 1979); and the ***Bibliography of the Athabasca Oil Sands*** (1974-), compiled by Susan Moysa.

Gloria Strathern's ***Alberta Bibliography 1954-1979*** which will be an extension of Bruce Peel's ***Bibliography of the Prairie Provinces to 1953*** (2d ed., 1973) is in progress. Needless to say, its publication will be a landmark in Alberta's bibliography.

British Columbia

British Columbia's bibliography has shown progress since 1974. Margaret Edwards and John Lort's ***Bibliography of British Columbia: Years of Growth 1900-1950*** (1975) completes the series of British Columbia's retrospective bibliographies. This is a noble effort and well done. An interdisciplinary approach is provided by Reid Gilbert's "British Columbia Studies" in ***Communiqué: Canadian Studies***, May 1975, and there is also ***British Columbia in Books*** (1974) by Mary Lou Cuddy and James Scott. ***Books from British Columbia,*** published since 1975 by the Association of Book Publishers of British Columbia, is a useful record. ***Kootenaiana*** (1976) published by the Libraries of Notre Dame University and Selkirk College is an example of British Columbia's regional bibliography.

THE NORTH

The bibliography of the north suffered a crushing blow with the death of the ***Arctic Bibliography*** (1953-1975) in 1975. It has, however, recovered admirably. A trend towards automation of bibliographic projects on the North is apparent as the *Arctic Science and Technology Information System* (ASTIS) and *Boreal Library Catalogue* are available on-line on the University of Alberta Computing Centre System and *Boreal Northern Titles* and *Yukon Bibliography* are available on QL Systems. The traditional close cooperation of librarians, scholars, and bibliographers in many projects continues. This can be illustrated by Information Nord Québec/Information North Quebec (INQ), a northern information network involving the Ecole Polytechnique de Montréal's' Centre d'ingenière nordique, Université du Québec à Chicoutimi's Centre de recherches du Moyen Nord, Laval's Centre d'études nordiques and McGill's Centre for Northern Studies and Research. Their efforts are directed towards creating a machine-readable *Union Catalogue* as well as a *Quebec-Labrador Bibliography*.

Printed bibliographies are, however, also being produced demonstrating a great deal of bibliographic activity. The Northwest Territories's *Government Publications Catalogue* (1977-) has had two annual editions but will become a biennial. Updates to the *Yukon Bibliography* appear about every two years. The interdisciplinary nature of northern bibliography can be illustrated by the following: N. Merle Peterson's *Ecology of the Canadian Arctic Archipelago* (1974-); Albert Dekin's *Arctic Archaeology* (1978); Stephen Johnson, William Adams and Michael Morrell's *The Birds of the Beaufort Sea* (1975); Robert Lanari's *Northwest Territories Community Bibliography* (1976); and Kenneth De la Barre, Louise Normandeau and Seth Rankin's *Northern Population Bibliography* (1978). Research and report literature, so important in northern studies, are listed in such works as Joan Sefton and Gordon Miller's *Arctic Island Pipeline Route: A Bibliography of Unpublished Fisheries and Environment Canada Reports* (1978) and Gertrude Rosenberg's *Current and Recent Research and Studies Relating to Northern Social Concerns* (1978-).

SUBJECTS

THE ARTS

Children's Literature

Canadian children's literature bibliography has been expanding gradually in the years since 1974 and is making very good progress. In 1975 Irene Aubrey was appointed the first Children's Literature Librarian/Consultant at the National Library. Since then she has been responsible for a number of lists of children's books and catalogues of exhibitions which have contributed to a carefully-selected body of bibliographic information. Examples of some of these include her *Notable Canadian Children's Books* and *Un choix de livres canadiens pour la jeunesse* for the years since 1973, *Sources d'information sur les livres canadiens-français pour enfants* (1979), *Canadian Children's Books: A Treasury of Pictures* (1976) and *Pictures to Share: Illustration in Canadian Children's Books* (1979). In addition to this comprehensive annual bibliographies, compiled by Mary Rubio and John Sorfleet, have been appearing in the periodical *Canadian Children's Literature* and cover the years since 1975.

A start has been made towards establishing a retrospective bibliography with June Callwood (June Frayne), Jennifer Laidley and Henry Hadeed's *Print for Young Canadians: A Bibliographical Catalogue of Canadian Fiction for Children, from 1825-1920*

(1975) and Bernard Amtmann's companion volumes, *Early Canadian Children's Books 1763-1840* (1976) and *A Bibliography of Canadian Children's Books and Books for Young People 1841-1867* (1977).

Comprehensive guides to the literature are Sheila Egoff's *Republic of Childhood* (2d ed., 1975) and Irma McDonough's *Canadian Books for Young People* (3d ed., 1980). Margaret Caughey's *Children's Choices of Canadian Books* (1979-) records the popularity of Canadian books with today's children and also provides annotations of these books. *Lurelu* (1978-), a new book reviewing periodical for Quebec children's books, combines reviews with feature articles.

Fine Arts & Architecture

Bibliographic progress in fine arts and architecture has not, unfortunately, kept pace with publishing progress in these subjects. One accomplishment which is hoped to be preliminary to some concerted bibliographic activity is the publication of *Fine Arts Library Resources in Canada* (1978) by the National Library of Canada's Resources Survey Section. Another positive achievement is the continuing appearance of the *"Canadian Illustrated News (Montreal)" 1869-1883: Index to Illustrations* (1977-). A setback, however, is the lapse in recent years of Canada's contribution to *RILA: Répertoire international de la littérature de l'art/International Repertory of the Literature of Art* (1975-). This is not a government-based project, but depends on voluntary contributions of bibliographic information from each country. The National Gallery of Canada, which had made this contribution, finds it impossible to continue to do so because of financial constraints.

There has been some bibliographic work done. The *Union List of Serials in Fine Arts in Canadian Libraries* was published in 1978 and does include Canadian titles. The hard copy finding aid to the microfiche collection of the National Gallery's *Exhibition Catalogues, 1919-1959* (1980) will serve as a valuable bibliography. The *Art and Pictorial Press in Canada* (1979), edited by Karen McKenzie and Mary Williamson is, for all intents and purposes, a bibliography. A work which might well be used as an example for other similar projects is Jill Wade's *Manitoba Architecture to 1940: A Bibliography* (1978). The Central Mortgage and Housing Corporation has published a brief listing, *Canadian Architecture: Bibliography* (1976). The Vance Bibliographies's Architecture Series include a few on Canadian architecture. Most of these, such as, *Religious Architecture of Canada* (1980) and *Conservation Architecture in Canada* (1980), have been compiled by Eric Swanick. Bibliographic information for fine arts and architecture is treasured wherever it can be found – sometimes in monographs such as Charles Hill's *Canadian Paintings in the Thirties* (1975) or Luc Noppen, Claude Paulette and Michel Tremblay's *Trois siècles d'architecture* (1979). It is unfortunate, however, that in recent years many otherwise very good monographs do not have adequate bibliographies.

To risk understating the case, there is a great deal of bibliographic work to be done in fine arts and architecture.

Linguistics

Recent years have seen a number of bibliographic works on both and each of the two official languages. On the topic of both, are William Mackey's *Le bilinguisme canadien* (1978) and Evangelos Afendras and Albertina Pianarosa's *Le bilinguisme chez l'enfant et l'apprentissage d'une langue seconde* (1975). On English, there are Walter Avis and A.M. Kinloch's *Writings on Canadian English, 1792-1975* (1978) and Dieter Bähr's *A Bibliography of Writings on the English Language in Canada: From 1857 to 1976* (1977); and on French, there are Conrad Sabourin and Rolande Lamarche's *Le français québécois* (1979); Claude-Marie Gagnon's *Bibliographie critique du joual 1970-1975* (1976) as well as the *Bibliographie des chroniques de langage publiées dans la presse au Canada* (1975-). This certainly appears to be a start.

Literature

A great quantity and a great variety of bibliographic works for Canadian literature have been published since 1974. A number of them stand out from the others by reason of their uniqueness or unusual approach. David Hayne and Antoine Sirois's "Preliminary Bibliography of Comparative Canadian Literature (English-Canadian and French-Canadian)" has appeared annually in the *Canadian Review of Comparative Literature* since 1976. Interest in this field and in this approach to studying our literature is increasing and is well served by this bibliography. The *Dictionnaire des oeuvres littéraires du Québec* (1978-), edited by Maurice Lemire, is a monumental work projected to be complete in four volumes. Its arrangement is unusual and takes some getting used to as it is based entirely on titles. Keeping pace with the burgeoning interest in the subject is *CDN SF & F: A Bibliography of Canadian Science Fiction and Fantasy* (1979) by John Robert Colombo. John Miska's *Canadian Prose Written in English, 1833-1980* (1980) is one of the first major literary bibliographies to be available only on microfiche. It is part of a more comprehensive Canadian literature data base which, when completed, may be available on-line.

To the consternation of a seemingly endless stream of students, very few of the literary bibliographies provide a thematic approach. In this area, the nod goes to Margery Fee and Ruth Cawker's *Canadian Fiction* (1976) with its modest, but nonetheless useful subject guide. Similarly, on the basis of demand, Michael Gnarowski's *Concise Bibliography of English-Canadian Literature* (Rev. ed., 1978); Robert Lecker and Jack David's *Annotated Bibliography of Canada's Major Authors* (1979-) and Pierre Cantin, Normand Harrington and Jean-Paul Hudon's *Bibliographie de la critique de la littérature québécoises dans les revues des XIXe et XXe siècles* (1979) are indispensible for their providing quick access to criticisms and reviews.

The one form of literature that must be singled out for mention is Canadian theatre. Bibliographies of Canadian theatre have absolutely burst upon the scene. Among the more extensive ones are Edouard Rinfret's *Le théâtre canadien d'expression française* (1975-); the *Brock Bibliography of Published Canadian Plays in English 1766 to 1978* (1980); Dorothy Sedgwick's *Bibliography of English-language Theatre and Drama 1800-1914* (1976); Patrick O'Neill's *Canadian Plays: A Supplementary Checklist to 1945* (1978); and John Ball and Richard Plant's *Bibliography of Canadian Theatre History 1583-1975* (1976) with its *Supplement 1975-76* (1979).

A measure of bibliographic control over theses and dissertations in Canadian literature is provided by Antoine Naaman's *Répertoire de thèses littéraires canadiennes de 1921 à 1976* (1978) and Michael Gnarowski's *Theses and Dissertations in Canadian Literature (English)* (1975).

Extensive author bibliographies are still badly needed. Some progress has been made with works such as Joy Bennett and Jim Polson's *Irving Layton: A Bibliography 1935-1977* (1979) and Marc Gagné's *Gilles Vigneault: Bibliographie descriptive et critique, discographie, filmographie, iconographie, chronologie* (1977). Regional bibliographies of authors are also beginning to appear with examples such as René Dionne's *Bibliographie de la littérature outaouaise et franco-ontarienne* (1978) and Jill Robinson's *Seas of Earth: An Annotated Bibliography of Saskatchewan Literature as it Relates to the Environment* (1977).

Some progress has also been made in the area of indexing periodicals. There is, to note a few, Ross Stuart and Thomas Vincent's *Chronological Index of Locally Written Verse Published in the Newspapers and Magazines of Upper and Lower Canada, Maritime Canada and Newfoundland through 1815* (1979); D.M.R. Bentley's *Checklist of Literary Materials in "The Week": Toronto, 1883-1896* (1978) and the *"Canadian Theatre Review" Index 1974-77* (1977).

This all sounds as though Canadian literature bibliography is in fine shape but we should not be overly influenced by quantity. "Canadian Literature/Littérature canadienne" the annual bibliography which appeared in *Canadian Literature* from 1959 to 1971, has been in a precarious state of near-orphanhood. The *Journal of Canadian Fiction* published it for 1972 through 1975, and *Essays on Canadian Writing* published it for 1971. Fortunately it has found a foster home with ECW Press which plans to publish the bibliographies since 1975 and annually in the future.

Translation

Translation should be a subject of importance in a country such as ours. Bibliographies of translations are, however, difficult to find. There is of course, *Index Translationum* (1948-), the UNESCO project to which Canada provides contributions via the National Library. In addition there is Philip Stratford's *Bibliography of Canadian Books in Translation* (2d ed., 1977) and the *University of Toronto Quarterly's* "Letters in Canada" has included a section on translations since 1976/77. Bibliographies on the subject of translation are even scarcer, but there is Jean Delisle and Lorraine Albert's *Guide bibliographique du traducteur, rédacteur et terminologue* (1979).

Music

The production of bibliographies of and about Canadian music has traditionally been slight but certainly is improving. The recent publication of *Music Resources in Canadian Collections* (1981) should stimulate some bibliographic activity. Lynne Jarman's *Canadian Music: A Selective Checklist, 1950-73* (1976) is a valuable contribution as is the substantial bibliographical information in Edward Moogk's *Roll Back the Years* (1975). There is also George Proctor's *Sources in Canadian Music: A Bibliography of Bibliographies* (2d ed., 1979) and Ian Bradley's *Selected Bibliography of Musical Cana-*

diana (Rev. ed., 1976). Recently published is Maria Calderisi's *Music Publishing in the Canadas, 1800-1867* (1981), an excellent example of the type of bibliographic history so badly needed.

The Canadian Music Centres in Toronto, Montreal and Vancouver, funded by the Canada Council, continue to make definite contributions to music bibliography in fulfilling their roles of collecting Canadian music and literature about it, and disseminating this information to Canadians.

International music bibliography is also served by Canada's continuing contribution to the bibliography, *RILM Abstracts: Répertoire international de littérature musicale/International Repertory of Music Literature* (1967-), which is a voluntary, non-governmental project. This bibliography is also available on-line on the DIALOG system.

THE SOCIAL SCIENCES

Anthropology, Sociology & Geography

Bibliographies of Canadian anthropology, sociology and geography, as such, seem to be extremely scarce; a situation similar to that reported in 1974. Many bibliographic works mentioned elsewhere in this paper, however, are applicable to these disciplines and this occurrence is certainly not intended as a reflection on these disciplines. Areas where there have been considerable bibliographic activity – native studies, ethnic studies, and women's studies – will be dealt with later in the conference.

Folklore studies do appear to be receiving some bibliographic attention. Edith Fowke and Carole Henderson Carpenter's *Bibliography of Canadian Folklore in English* (2d ed., forthcoming) has recently been announced. The other contributions to this activity seem to be emanating almost exclusively from the east with works such as Paul Mercer's *Newfoundland Songs and Ballads in Print 1842-1974* (1979); Geraldine Barter's *Critically Annotated Bibliography of Works Published and Unpublished Relating to the Culture of French Newfoundlanders* (1977); and Eleanor Magee and Margaret Fancy's *Catalogue of Canadian Folk Music in the Mary Mellish Archibald Library and Other Special Collections (1974).* The Université de Moncton's *Inventaire général des sources documentaires sur les Acadiens* (1975-77) also includes secondary printed sources.

Education

Bibliography on the subject of education in Canada has been meagre since 1974. The Bibliography Series of the Ontario Institute for Studies in Education has dominated the scene, especially with Ethel Auster's *Reference Sources on Canadian Education* (1978). In addition there are such titles as Gail Blount's *Collective Bargaining in Canadian Education* (1975) and Linda Corman's *Community Education in Canada* (1975). There are, however, other works such as Philippe Houyoux's *Bibliographie de l'histoire de l'éducation au Québec des origines à 1960* (1978).

An exciting group of bibliographies that are emerging are the teachers' guides for Canadian studies. Virginia Robeson and Christine Sylvester's *Teaching Canadian*

Studies: An Evaluation of Print Materials; Grade 1-13 (1980) concentrates on texts; Paul Bennett's *Rediscovering Canadian History: A Teacher's Guide for the '80s* (1980) includes print and non-print materials. Other examples are Patricia Shand's *Canadian Music: A Selective Guidelist for Teachers* (1978); Paul Robinson's *After Survival: A Teacher's Guide to Canadian Resources* (1977) and the series *Resource Guide for the Teaching of Canadian Literature* (1977), which takes a thematic approach to Canadian literature. These are the type of publications that are so badly needed for Canadian studies.

History

Many of the works mentioned in the sections on area bibliography could legitimately be claimed as history bibliographies and will certainly be heavily used by history scholars and students. Although the production of bibliographies for history has been steady there has been no general comprehensive bibliography produced since 1974. There has been one guide: Yvan Lamonde's *Guide d'histoire du Québec* (1976).

There appears to be a trend towards various aspects of social history and bibliographies have at last started to appear. Some of these are Fernand Harvey and Gilles Houle's *Les classes sociales au Canada et au Québec* (1979); Peter Southam and Francine Barry's *Caractéristiques de la pauvreté au Québec 1940-73* (1975); and the *Hamilton Working Class 1820-1977* (1978) compiled by Wayne Roberts.

Bibliographies of the history of specific subjects also seem to be proliferating. These include Douglas Vaisey's *The Labour Companion* (1980) on labour history; Alan Artibise and Gilbert Stelter's *Canada's Urban Past* (1981); Owen Cooke's *The Canadian Military Experience 1867-1967* (1979); George Richardson's *Survey of Canadian Mining History* (1974); and Paul Craven, Anne Forrest and Tom Traves's *Canadian Company Histories* (Rev. ed., 1978).

It is a pleasure to note that a number of indexes to periodicals have also been compiled. Among them are Hilary Bates and Robert Sherman's *Index to the Publications of the Ontario Historical Society 1899-1972* (1974); Marilyn Flitton's *Index to the "Canadian Monthly and National Review" and to "Rose-Belford's Canadian Monthly and National Review" 1872-1882* (1976) and the *Index to "Saskatchewan History" vol. 1-30, 1948-1977* (1978).

Law

A number of the concerns expressed in 1974 on the subject of Canadian legal bibliography have been addressed. A second edition of Reynald Boult's comprehensive *Bibliography of Canadian Law* was published in 1977. The *Checklists of Law Reports and Statutes in Canadian Law Libraries: 1, Canadian Law Reports* (1977), published by the National Library's Resources Survey Division, serves as a bibliography as well as a union list.

The situation with regard to specialized search tools required by lawyers and law libraries is still less than ideal. On the other hand, bibliographies designed for a non-legal clientèle have emerged. Gail Dykstra's *Bibliography of Canadian Legal Materials* (1977) is a prime example of such a work. Other examples include *CLIC's Legal Materials Letter* (1977-) and Katia Mayer's *Canadian Criminology Annotated Biblio-*

graphy (1977). The inclusion of so much law-related material on-line on QL Systems will inevitably influence future developments.

Politics, Economics & Business

Good solid bibliographic work seems to characterize the developments in politics, economics and business. Grace Heggie's *Canadian Political Parties, 1867-1968* (1977) is the most comprehensive major contribution to the bibliography of Canadian politics. Amos Lakos's *Comparative Provincial Politics of Canada* (1978) serves as a partial supplement. Wallace Clement and Daniel Drache's *Practical Guide to Canadian Political Economy* (1978) and Trevor Dick's *Economic History of Canada: A Guide to Information Sources* (1978) are also useful additions to the bibliographic literature. A new edition of Barbara Brown's *Canadian Business and Economics* (1976) is in progress. The *Canadian Business Index* (formerly *Canadian Business Periodicals Index*), published since 1975, now includes reports of Canadian corporations as well as periodical articles. Ian Dew's *Selected Annotated Bibliography of Rural Canada* (1976) deals with this topic from a socio-economic and planning perspective.

Maps

In recent years, Canadian energies in the field of cartobibliography have been directed towards the cataloguing of maps – developing standardized bibliographic description and form of entry. These efforts have been essential and if they mean that there are fewer comprehensive map bibliographies now, those which will be produced in the future will be of higher quality. These efforts represent substantial and recognized contributions by Canada to the world of cartobibliography. It is predicted not only that the production of the much-needed map bibliographies will increase in the near future, but also that cartobibliographic information will be integrated into general bibliographies.

This is not to say there have been no map bibliographies produced. Two quite outstanding examples are Coolie Verner and Basil Stuart-Stubbs's *The Northpart of America* (1979) and William Oppen's *Riel Rebellions: A Cartographic History* (1979). Both of these contain extensive bibliographic information although they could also be considered atlases rather than bibliographies.

The National Map Collection of the Public Archives of Canada is the single most prolific producer of map bibliographies. The sixteen volume *Catalogue of the National Map Collection, Public Archives of Canada* (1976), which contains only a portion of their holdings, has become an invaluable identification and verification tool. It has also published bibliographies of certain areas, such as Guy Poulin and Francine Cadieux's *Index to Township Plans of the Canadian West* (1974), as well as of certain subjects, such as Robert Hayward's *Fire Insurance Plans in the National Map Collection* (1977).

Regional contributions to map bibliography include union lists of atlases, such as Ronald MacDonald's *Union List of Atlases* (1974) in British Columbia academic and research collections; Yves Tessier's *Catalogue collectif des atlas des cartothèques universitaires du Québec* (1976) and Kate Donkin and Rita Finch's *Union List of Atlases in*

Ontario Universities (1976). Although not exclusively Canadian in content they do include the major Canadian atlases.

As mentioned earlier, the state of map bibliography in Canada leaves a great deal to be desired, but the prospects for the future are exceptionally good.

THE SCIENCES

Science & Technology

There does not appear to have been any major breakthrough in Canadian science and technology bibliography since 1974. Problems which were expressed then continue to exist. A great deal of Canadian scientific scholarship continues to be published outside of the country. The federal government contributes financially to foreign indexing and abstracting services, such as MEDLINE, Commonwealth Agriculture Bureaux and the International Nuclear Information System which cover Canadian scientific research. There is, however, the difficulty of identifying and retrieving Canadian-authored or Canadian-related materials in the established indexing and abstracting sources. As in 1974, the future seems to lie in Canadian-produced bibliographic data bases with comprehensive Canadian coverage. A very brief selection of some of the bibliographies which have been produced include Christopher Sparrow and Leslie Foster's *Annotated Bibliography of Canadian Air Pollution Literature* (1975); the *Bibliography of British Columbia Ornithology* (1979-); and Wyley Powell and Walter Falby's *Ontario Energy Catalogue* (1977). There are also some of a historical nature such as Charles Roland and Paul Potter's *Annotated Bibliography of Canadian Medical Periodicals 1826-1975* (1979) and Viateur Dubé's *Bibliographie sur la préhistoire de la psychiatrie canadienne au 19ᵉ siècle* (1976).

CONCLUSION

A number of the recommendations made at the National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography have been acted upon. For example, the retrospective national bibliography has made its appearance, a Canadian book review compilation and a current newspaper index exist, the national periodical index has increased its coverage, Ontario's bibliography is on the road to recovery, British Columbia's retrospective bibliography has been completed and there has been some retrospective indexing of newspapers and periodicals. With respect to provincial government publications, nine provinces and one of the territories publish regular listings of their official publications. Basic general bibliographies have been produced for children's literature, music, folklore, education, politics, business and economics. Quite a number of works have continued regular publication and a variety of revisions have appeared.

Aside from the context of the 1974 recommendations there are a number of observations that can be made concerning bibliographic developments. The production of local history bibliographies and regional bibliographies represent substantial local contributions. Theatre bibliography in both French and English has made considerable progress. The appearance of a number of major bibliographies on microfiche has been a fairly recent occurrence.

All in all these developments are impressive. Many key works have been produced and a lot of preliminary ground-breaking has been done.

One aspect of our bibliographic development that has not been mentioned is the quality of these bibliographies. The items cited were selected primarily for their subject content, for the practical purpose of providing access to material for Canadian studies. They are not, by any means, of the same quality and it is their quality which will determine how well they provide access to the material required. The purpose here is not to evaluate these bibliographies, but rather to sound a warning that we not be deceived by the quantity and fine sounding titles of our bibliographic achievements. There is still a long way to go in establishing recognized standards and in appreciating the criteria of quality bibliographic work.

Credit should be given to the compilers of these bibliographies. There are a number of names repeated in this paper: Alan Artibise, Irene Aubrey, Olga Bishop, Ian Dew, Michael Gnarowski, Alison Kemshead, Dorothy Ryder, Eric Swanick, Robert Vaison, and Thomas Vincent. There are other names familiar to Canadian bibliography: Bernard Amtmann, Ved Arora, André Beaulieu, Margaret Edwards, Jean Hamelin, David Hayne, Irma McDonough, Hazel MacTaggart, William Morley, Catherine Pross, Paul Pross, Gilbert Stelter, Gloria Strathern, and Jill Wade. And there is a host of new names. Some of these people are established bibliographers; most are also scholars, or teachers, or librarians. They are all dedicated individuals who have made invaluable contributions to Canadian bibliography. They deserve our acknowledgements. There is work to be done, and work to be continued, and the need of such people to do it.

NOTE

Early in 1980 Anne B. Piternick, Chairman of the Committee on Bibliographical Services for Canada (now the Committee on Bibliography and Information Services for the Social Sciences and Humanities of the National Library Advisory Board - CBISSSH), requested comments on significant developments since 1974 from those who had made formal presentations at the National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography in Vancouver. The author wishes to acknowledge the assistance provided by these responses from: Jean-Rémi Brault, Geoffrey Chapman, Jack Corse, Shirley B. Elliott, David M. Hayne, Jacqueline Hunter, Helmut Kallmann, Paul M. Koroscil, Richard Landon, Douglas Lochhead, Patricia Marchak, William F.E. Morley, Bruce Peel, Gail Starr, Gloria M. Strathern, Edward G. Summers.

The author wishes to acknowledge also the assistance provided by Anne B. Piternick, Chairman, CBISSSH; Peter Greig, Secretary, CBISSSH; and numerous colleagues in the libraries at McGill University.

WORKS CITED

AREAS

CANADA

Bibliografia de historia de América. Compiled by Irma Larouche. Contribution of the National Library of Canada to the *Revista de historia de América*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1977- .

CM: Canadian Materials for Schools and Libraries. Edited by Adele Ashby. Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, 1971- . (Formerly *Canadian Materials*).

Canadian Book Review Annual. Toronto: Peter Martin Associates, 1975- .

Canadian Books in Print. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1967- .

Canadian Essay and Literature Index. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, vol. 1-3, 1973-1975.

Canadian Essays and Collections Index, 1971-72. Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, 1976. [5], 219p.

Canadian News Index. Toronto: Information Access; Micromedia, 1977- . (Formerly *Canadian Newspaper Index*).

Canadian Periodical Index/Index des periodoques canadiens. Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, vol. 1, 1938/47- .

Canadian Serials Directory/Répertoire des publications seriées canadiennes 1976. Edited by Martha Pluscauskas. 2d ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1977. xii, 534p.

Canadian Studies 1981: A Catalogue of Publications. Toronto: Canadian Book Publishers' Council and Association of Canadian Publishers, 1981. 21p. (Formerly *Buyer's Guide to Canadian Titles*).

Canadiana. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1950- .

Canadiana (Microfiche). Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1978- .

Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographs/Monographies. [Microfiche]. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1980- .

Canadiana 1973-1980 (Microfiche). Ottawa: National Library of Canada, forthcoming.

Dictionary of Canadian Biography. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1966- .

Government of Canada Publications: Quarterly Catalogue/Publications du gouvernement du Canada: Catalogue trimestriel. Hull, Que.: Canada Publishing Centre, vol. 27, 1979- .

Granatstein, J.L.; and Stevens, Paul. *Canada Since 1867: A Bibliographical Guide.* 2d ed. Toronto: Samuel Stevens Hakkert, 1977. ix, 204p.

Guide to Selecting Canadian Materials: Bibliography of Bibliographies 1981. 3d ed. Toronto: Canadian Book Information Centre, 1981. 23p.

Jarvi, Edith T.; McLean, Isabel K.; and MacKenzie, Catherine. *Canadian Selection: Books and Periodicals for Libraries.* Toronto: Published by the University of Toronto Press for the Centre for Research in Librarianship, Faculty of Library Science, University of Toronto, 1978. xii, 1060p.

McLean, Isabel K.; and Jarvi, Edith. *Canadian Selection: Books and Periodicals for Libraries: 1977-1979 Supplement.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980. 398p.

Microlog Index. Toronto: Micromedia, vol. 1, 1979- .

National Library of Canada. Newspaper Section. *Union List of Canadian Newspapers Held by Canadian Libraries/Liste collective des journaux canadiens disponible dans les bibliothèques canadiennes.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1977. xxix, 483p.

Profile Index: Canadian Provincial and Municipal Publications/Index profile: Publications provinciales et municipales canadiennes. Toronto: Micromedia, vol. 1-6, 1973-1978.

Pross, Catherine A.; and Pross, A. Paul. *A Guide to the Identification and Acquisition of Canadian Provincial Government Publications.* Halifax: School of Library Service, University Libraries, Dalhousie University, 1977. i, 69*l*.

Public Archives of Canada. Library. *Catalogue of the Public Archives Library/Catalogue de la Bibliothèque des Archives publiques.* 12 vols. Boston, Mass.: G.K. Hall, 1979.

Publicat Index. Toronto: Micromedia, vol. 1-2, 1977-1978.

Ryder, Dorothy E. "Canadian Reference Sources." *Canadian Library Journal*, vol. 31, 1974- . (1974-1975 "Canadian Reference Works").

______. *Canadian Reference Sources: A Selective Guide.* Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, 1973. x, 185p. (2d edition forthcoming).

______. *Canadian Reference Sources: Supplement.* Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, 1975. xi, 121p.

______. *Checklist of Canadian Directories, 1790-1950/ Répertoire des annuaires canadiens, 1790-1950.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979. xvii, 288p.

Union List of Manuscripts in Canadian Repositories/Catalogue collectif des manuscrits des archives canadiennes. Rev. (1975) ed. 2 vols. Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1975.

______. Supplement. Ottawa: Public Archives of Canada, 1976- .

Union List of Scientific Serials in Canadian Libraries/Catalogue collectif des publications scientifiques dans les bibliothèques canadiennes. 8th ed. 2 vols. Ottawa: Canada Institute for Scientific and Technical Information, 1979.

Union List of Serials in the Social Sciences and Humanities Held by Canadian Libraries/Liste collective des publications en serie dans le domaine des sciences sociales et humaines dans les bibliothèques canadiennes. [Microfiche]. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, ed. 1, 1980- .

Urban Canada/Canada urbain. Toronto: Micromedia, vol. 1-2, 1977-1978.

ATLANTIC PROVINCES

"Bibliography/Bibliographie: Recent Publications Relating to the History of the Atlantic Region." *Acadiensis.* Fredericton, N.B.: Department of History, University of New Brunswick, vol. 5, 1975- .

Fisher, Gerald. "Atlantic Canada." In *Communiqué: Canadian Studies*. Willowdale, Ont.: Association of Canadian Community Colleges, vol. 3, no. 2, Jan. 1977. 70p.

Newfoundland

Kemshead, Alison. *Newfoundland: A Bibliography of Social, Economic and Political Conditions*. Public Administration Series: Bibliography; P-449. Monticello, Ill.: Vance Bibliographies, 1980. 33p.

Newfoundland. Department of Public Works and Services. Information Services. *List of Publications Offered by the Government of Newfoundland and Labrador*. St. John's: Department of Public Works and Services, vol. 1-11, 1974-1977.

Sterns, Maurice A.; Hiscock, Philip; and Daley, Bruce. *Newfoundland and Labrador: Social Science Research; A Select Annotated Bibliography*. St. John's: Dept. of Sociology, Memorial University of Newfoundland, 1975. iii, 70p.

Prince Edward Island

Baglole, Harry. *Exploring Island History: A Guide to the Historical Resources of Prince Edward Island*. Belfast, P.E.I.: Ragweed Press, 1977. 310p.

Kemshead, Alison. *Prince Edward Island: A Bibliography of Social, Economic and Political Conditions*. Public Administration Series: Bibliography; P-529. Monticello, Ill.: Vance Bibliographies, 1980. 16p.

Prince Edward Island. Island Information Service. *Provincial Government Publications Checklist*. Charlottetown: Island Information Service, 1976- .

Nova Scotia

Marble, Allan E. *Catalogue of Published Genealogies of Nova Scotia Families*. Halifax: Genealogical Committee, Royal Nova Scotia Historical Society, 1979. 51p.

Nova Scotia. Legislative Library. *Publications of the Province of Nova Scotia Quarterly Checklist*. Halifax: Nova Scotia Legislative Library, 1981- .

Tennyson, Brian. *Cape Breton: A Bibliography*. Halifax: Department of Education, 1978. vi, 114p.

Tratt, Gertrude E.N. *A Survey and Listing of Nova Scotia Newspapers 1752-1957: With Particular Reference to the Period before 1867*. Halifax: School of Library Service, Dalhousie University, 1979. 193p.

Vaison, Robert. *Nova Scotia Past and Present: A Bibliography and Guide*. Halifax: Nova Scotia Dept. of Education, 1976. v, 164p.

———. *Studying Nova Scotia: Its History and Present State; Its Politics and Economy; A Bibliography and Guide*. Halifax: Mount Saint Vincent University, 1974. 123p.

Vincent, Thomas Brewer. *Historical Directory of Nova Scotia Newspapers and Journals Before Confederation*. Kingston, Ont.: Royal Military College of Canada, 1977. vii, 67p.

New Brunswick

Swanick, Eric L. *New Brunswick History: A Checklist of Secondary Sources. First Supplement*. Fredericton, N.B.: Legislative Library, 1974. vi, 96p. (2d supplement forthcoming).

———. *New Brunswick Regional Development During the 60's and the 70's: An Introductory Bibliography*. Public Administration Series: Bibliography; P-204. Monticello, Ill.: Vance Bibliographies, 1979. 37p.

QUEBEC

Beaulieu, André; and Hamelin, Jean. *La presse québécoise des origines à nos jours*. 2d ed. Québec: Presses de l'Université Laval, 1973- .

Bibliographie du Québec, 1821-1967. Notices établies par le Bureau de la bibliographie rétrospective, Bibliothèque national du Québec, Ministère des affaires culturelles. Québec: Editeur officiel du Québec, 1980- .

Bibliothèque nationale du Québec. *Laurentiana parus avant 1821*. Par Milada Vlach avec la collaboration de Yolande Buono. Montréal: Bibliothèque nationale du Québec, 1976. xxvii, 416, 120p.

Bibliothèque nationale du Québec. Centre bibliographique. *Bibliographie de bibliographies québécoises*. 2 vols. Montréal: Bibliothèque nationale du Québec, 1979.

———.———. *Premier supplément*. Montréal: Bibliothèque nationale du Québec, 1980. 145p.

Demers, Henri. *Le St. Laurent: Bibliographie économique*. Québec: Ministère de l'Industrie et du Commerce, 1979. 93p.

Gourd, Benoit-Beaudry. *Bibliographie de l'Abitibi-Témiscamingue*. Ed. préliminaire. Rouyn: Direction des Etudes Universitaires dans l'Ouest québécois (Nord-Ouest), Université du Québec, 1973. x, 270p.

______. ______. *Supplément.* Rouyn, 1975- .

Hardy, René; Trépanier, Guy; and Belleau, Jacques. *La Mauricie et les Bois-Francs: Inventaire bibliographique 1760-1975.* Montréal: Editions du Boréal Express, 1977. 389p.

Lauzier, Suzanne; and Cormier, Normand. *Les ouvrages de référence du Québec: Supplément 1967-1974.* Montréal: Ministère des Affaires culturelles, 1975. xv, 305p.

St. Amour, Jean-Pierre F. *L'Outaouais québécois: Guide de recherche et bibliographie sélective.* Hull: Centre d'études universitaires dans l'Ouest québécois, Université du Québec, 1978. x, 178p.

Tawell, Rachel; and Beaumont-Moisan, Renée. *L'Ile d'Anticosti: Bibliographie.* Québec: Editeur officiel du Québec, 1975. 69p.

Université de Sherbrooke. Département d'histoire. Groupe de recherche en histoire régionale. *Bibliographie d'histoire des Cantons de l'Est.* Sherbrooke: Département d'histoire, Université de Sherbrooke, 1975. 120p.

Université du Québec à Trois-Rivières. Bibliothèque. *Catalogue collectif régional: Mauricie et centre du Québec.* Trois Rivières: Bibliothèque, Université du Québec à Trois Rivières, 1977- .

ONTARIO

Aitken, Barbara B. *Local Histories of Ontario Municipalities, 1951-1977: A Bibliography.* Toronto: Ontario Library Association, 1978. ix, 120p.

Annual Bibliography of Ontario History: 1980. Sudbury, Ont.: Laurentian University Press/Les Presses de l'Université Laurentienne, for the Ontario Historical Society, 1980. 32p.

Bishop, Olga B. *Bibliography of Ontario History, 1867-1976: Cultural, Economic, Political, Social.* 2 vols. Ontario Historical Studies Series. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980.

______. *Publications of the Government of Ontario, 1867-1900.* Toronto: Ministry of Government Services, 1976. xi, 409p.

MacTaggart, Hazel I.; and Sundquist, Kenneth E. *Publications of the Government of Ontario, 1956-1971.* Toronto: Ministry of Government Services, 1975. xi, 410p.

Morley, William F.E. *Ontario and the Canadian North.* Canadian Local Histories to 1950: A Bibliography, vol. 3. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1978. xxxii, 322p.

Waintman, Susan; and Tampold, Ana. *Ontario Royal Commissions and Commissions of Inquiry 1867-1978: A Checklist of Reports.* Toronto: Research and Information Services, Legislative Library, 1980. viii, 74p.

THE WEST

Artibise, Alan F.J. *Western Canada Since 1870: A Select Bibliography and Guide.* Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1978. xiii, 294p.

Peel, Bruce B. *A Bibliography of the Prairie Provinces to 1953: With Biographical Index.* 2d ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1973. xxviii, 780p.

Manitoba

Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba. History Committee. *Local History in Manitoba: A Key to Places, Districts, Schools and Transport Routes.* Winnipeg: Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba, 1976. 166p.

Sloane, D. Louise; Roseneder, Janette M.; and Hernandez, Marilyn J. *Winnipeg: A Centennial Bibliography.* Winnipeg: Armstrong Printers for the Manitoba Library Association, 1974. xi, 140p.

Teillet, D.J. *A Northern Manitoba Bibliography.* Ottawa: Department of Regional Economic Expansion; Winnipeg: Department of Mines, Natural Resources and Environment, 1979. iv, 82p.

Tooth, John. *Looking for Manitoba Government Publications: An Annotated Bibliography of Books and Pamphlets.* Winnipeg: Library, Department of Education, 1978. ix, 267p.

Saskatchewan

Arora, Ved Parkash. *The Saskatchewan Bibliography.* Regina: Saskatchewan Provincial Library, 1980. ix, 787p.

Saskatchewan. Legislative Library. *Checklist of Saskatchewan Government Publications, 1976- .* Regina: Saskatchewan Legislative Library, 1977- .

University of Saskatchewan. Institute for Northern Studies. *Northern Saskatchewan Bibliography.* Edited by Sandra Dibb. Saskatoon: Institute for Northern Studies, University of Saskatchewan, 1975. xii, 81p.

Alberta

Alberta. Department of Government Services. Public Affairs Bureau. *Publications Catalogue, 1973-* . Edmonton: Department of Government Services, 1974- .

Alberta. Historical Resources Library. *Alberta's Local Histories in the Historical Resources Library.* 4th ed. Edmonton: Historical Resources Library, Provincial Archives of Alberta, 1979. 80p. in various pagings.

Backhaus, Christine E. *Royal Commissions and Commissions of Inquiry in Alberta, 1905-1976.* Edmonton: Legislative Library, 1977. 37p.

Bibliography of the Athabasca Oil Sands, Fort McMurray, Alberta Area: Socio-economic and Environmental Studies. Compiled by Susan Moysa. Edmonton: Library, Alberta Environment, 1974- .

Dew, Ian F. *Bibliography of Material Relating to Southern Alberta Published to 1970.* Lethbridge: Learning Resources Centre, University of Lethbridge, 1975. viii, 407l.

Ross (P.S.) & Partners. *The Economy of Northern Alberta: Bibliography.* Edmonton: Northern Development Group, Department of Business Development and Tourism, Government of Alberta, 1975. iii, 71p.

Strathern, Gloria M. *Alberta Bibliography 1954-1979.* Edmonton: Western Canadiana Publications Project, University of Alberta, forthcoming.

British Columbia

Books from British Columbia. Vancouver: Association of Book Publishers of British Columbia, 1975- .

Cuddy, Mary Lou; and Scott, James J. *British Columbia in Books: An Annotated Bibliography.* Vancouver: J.J. Douglas, 1974. 144p.

Edwards, Margaret H.; and Lort, John C.R. *A Bibliography of British Columbia: Years of Growth 1900-1950.* Victoria: Social Sciences Research Centre, University of Victoria, 1975. x, 446p.

Gilbert, Reid. "British Columbia Studies." In *Communiqué: Canadian Studies.* Willowdale, Ont.: Association of Canadian Community Colleges, vol. 1, no. 4, May 1975. 29p.

Notre Dame University of Nelson. Library. *Kootenaiana: A Listing of Books, Government Publications, Monographs, Journals, Pamphlets, etc. Relating to the Kootenay Area of the Province of British Columbia and Located in the Libraries of Notre Dame University of Nelson, B.C. and/or Selkirk College, Castlegar, B.C. up to 31 March, 1976.* Nelson, B.C.: Notre Dame University Library; Castlegar, B.C.: Selkirk College Library, 1976. 167p.

THE NORTH

Arctic Bibliography. Washington, D.C.: Prepared by the Arctic Institute of North America with support of government agencies of the U.S. and Canada, vol. 1-16, 1953-1975.

De la Barre, Kenneth; Normandeau, Louise; and Rankin, Seth. *Northern Population Bibliography: Canada/Bibliographie sur les populations nordiques canadiennes.* Calgary: Arctic Institute of North America, 1978. x, 167p.

Dekin, Albert A. *Arctic Archaeology: A Bibliography and History.* New York: Garland Publishing, 1978. 279p.

Johnson, Stephen R.; Adams, William J.; and Morrell, Michael R. *The Birds of the Beaufort Sea: An Annotated Bibliography.* Victoria: Beaufort Sea Project, 1975. 169p.

Lanari, Robert. *Northwest Territories Community Bibliography/Bibliographie par communauté Territoires du Nord-Ouest.* Ottawa: Department of Indian and Northern Affairs, 1976. 79p.

Northwest Territories. Dept. of Information. Publications and Production Division. *Government Publications Catalogue.* Yellowknife: Department of Information, 1977- .

Peterson, N. Merle. *Ecology of the Canadian Arctic Archipelago: Selected References.* Ottawa: Information Canada, 1974- .

Rosenberg, Gertrude. *Current and Recent Research and Studies Relating to Northern Social Concerns.* Ottawa: Department of Indian and Northern Affairs, 1978- .

Sefton, Joan; and Miller, Gordon. *The Arctic Islands Pipeline Route: A Bibliography of Unpublished Fisheries and Environment Canada Reports: AIPP Preliminary Report 1977.* Ottawa: Department of Indian and Northern Affairs, 1978. x, 154p.

Yukon Bibliography Update to 1975. Compiled by M.F. Ridge and Geraldine A. Cooke. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta, 1977. xi, 408p.

Yukon Bibliography Update to 1979. Compiled by Irina G. Singh. 2 vols. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta, 1980-81.

Yukon Bibliography Update to 1977. Compiled by Heather L. Thomas. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta, 1978. x, 476p.

Yukon Bibliography Update to 1973. Compiled by C. Anne Hemstock. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta, 1975. x, 384p.

SUBJECTS

THE ARTS

Children's Literature

Amtmann, Bernard. *A Bibliography of Canadian Children's Books and Books for Young People: 1841-1867/Livres de l'enfance et livres de la jeunesse au Canada: 1841-1867.* Montreal: Bernard Amtmann, 1977. viii, 124p.

———. *Early Canadian Children's Books 1763-1840: A Bibliographical Investigation into the Nature and Extent of Early Canadian Children's Books and Books for Young People/Livres de l'enfance et livres de la jeunesse au Canada 1763-1840: Etude bibliographique.* Montreal: Bernard Amtmann, 1976. xv, 150p.

Aubrey, Irene E. *Canadian Children's Books: A Treasury of Pictures/Livres canadiens d'enfants: Un trésor d'images.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1976. 18ℓ.

———. *Un choix de livres canadiens pour la jeunesse: Supplément 1975.* Ottawa: Bibliothèque nationale du Canada, 1977. [13]p.

———. *Un choix de livres canadiens pour la jeunesse: Supplements 1976 et 1977.* Ottawa: Bibliothèque nationale du Canada, 1979. [27]p.

———. *Notable Canadian Children's Books: 1978 Supplement/Un choix de livres canadiens pour la jeunesse: Supplément 1978.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1980. 30p.

———. *Notable Canadian Children's Books: 1975 Supplement.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1977. [13]p.

———. *Notable Canadian Children's Books: 1976 and 1977 Supplements.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979. [21]p.

———. *Notable Canadian Children's Books/Un choix de livres canadiens pour la jeunesse.* Revised and updated to include notable books published in 1973 and 1974. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1976. vii, 94p.

———. *Pictures to Share: Illustration in Canadian Children's Books/Images pour tous: Illustrations de livres canadiens pour enfants.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979. iv, 32p.

———. *Sources d'information sur les livres canadiens-français pour enfants/Sources of French Canadian Materials for Children.* Rev. and enlarged. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979. 6p.

Callwood, June [June Frayne]; Laidley, Jennifer; and Hadeed, Henry. *Print for Young Canadians: A Bibliographical Catalogue of Canadian Fiction for Children, from 1825-1920.* Toronto: n. p., 1975. x, 80p.

Caughey, Margaret. *Children's Choices of Canadian Books.* Ottawa: Citizen's Committee on Children, 1979- .

Egoff, Sheila A. *The Republic of Childhood: A Critical Guide to Canadian Children's Literature in English.* 2d ed. Toronto: Oxford University Press, 1975. viii, 335p.

Lurelu: Bulletin d'information sur la litterature de jeunesse. Montreal: Communication-Jeunesse, vol. 1, 1978- .

McDonough, Irma. *Canadian Books for Young People/Livres canadiens pour la jeunesse, 1980.* 3d ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980. 205p.

Rubio, Mary; and Sorfleet, John R. "Canadian Children's Literature 1977: A Bibliography." *Canadian Children's Literature,* no. 17 (1980), pp. 27-55.

———. "Canadian Children's Literature 1976: A Bibliography." *Canadian Children's Literature,* no. 13 (1979), pp. 29-50.

Sorfleet, John R.; and Rubio, Mary. "Canadian Children's Literature 1975: A Bibliography." *Canadian Children's Literature,* no. 11 (1978), pp. 39-58.

Fine Arts & Architecture

Art and Pictorial Press in Canada: Two Centuries of Art Magazines. Edited by Karen McKenzie and Mary F. Williamson. Toronto: Art Gallery of Ontario, 1979. 71p.

"Canadian Illustrated News (Montreal)" 1869-1883: Index to Illustrations. Compiled by Andrea A. Retfalvi. Toronto: Library, Department of Fine Art, University of Toronto, 1977- .

Central Mortgage and Housing Corporation. *Canadian Architecture: Bibliography/Architecture canadienne: Bibliographie.* Ottawa: Central Mortgage and Housing Corporation, 1976. 12ℓ.

Hill, Charles C. *Canadian Paintings in the Thirties*. Ottawa: National Gallery of Canada, 1975. 223p.

National Gallery of Canada. *Exhibition Catalogues, 1919-1959*. [Microfiche]. Toronto: McLaren Micro Publishing, 1980.

National Library of Canada. Resources Survey Section. *Fine Arts Library Resources in Canada*. 2 vols. Research Collections in Canadian Libraries, ser. 2, pt. 6. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1978.

National Library of Canada. Union Catalogue of Serials Division. *Union List of Serials in Fine Arts in Canadian Libraries/Inventaire des publications en série dans le domaine des beaux-arts dans les bibliothèques canadiennes*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1978. vii, 236p.

Noppen, Luc; Paulette, Claude; and Tremblay, Michel. *Trois siècles d'architecture*. n. p., Libre Expression, 1979. xi, 440p.

RILA: Répertoire international de la littérature de l'art/International Repertory of the Literature of Art. Williamstown, Mass.: Sterling and Francine Clark Art Institute; New York: College Art Association of America, vol. 1, 1975- .

Swanick, Eric L. *Conservation Architecture in Canada: An Introductory Bibliography*. Architecture Series: Bibliography; A-174. Monticello, Ill.: Vance Bibliographies, 1980. 7p.

______. *Religious Architecture of Canada*. Architecture Series: Bibliography; A-188. Monticello, Ill.: Vance Bibliographies, 1980. 8p.

Wade, Jill. *Manitoba Architecture to 1940: A Bibliography*. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba Press, 1978. xvi, 109p.

Linguistics

Afendras, Evangelos A.; and Pianarosa, Albertina. *Le bilinguisme chez l'enfant et l'apprentissage d'une langue seconde: Bibliographie analytique/Child Bilingualism and Second Language Learning: A Descriptive Bibliography*. Québec: Presses de l'Université Laval, 1975. xxiii, 401p.

Avis, Walter S.; and Kinloch, A.M. *Writings on Canadian English, 1792-1975: An Annotated Bibliography*. Toronto: Fitzhenry & Whiteside, 1978. 153p.

Bähr, Dieter. *A Bibliography of Writings on the English Language in Canada: From 1857 to 1976*. Heidelberg: Winter, 1977. xi, 51p.

Bibliographie des chroniques de langage publiées dans la presse au Canada. Montréal: Département de linguistique et philologie, Université de Montréal, 1975- .

Gagnon, Claude-Marie. *Bibliographie critique du joual, 1970-1975*. Québec: Institut supérieur des sciences humaines, Université Laval, 1976. 117l.

Mackey, William F. *Le bilinguisme canadien: Bibliographie analytique et guide du chercheur*. Québec: Centre International de Recherche sur le Bilinguisme, 1978. 603p.

Sabourin, Conrad; and Lamarche, Rolande. *Le français québécois: Bibliographie analytique*. Ed. 1979. Montréal: Service des publications, Office de la langue française, 1979. xv, 329p.

Literature

Ball, John; and Plant, Richard. *A Bibliography of Canadian Theatre History, 1583-1975*. Toronto: Playwrights Co-op, 1976. 160p.

______. *The Bibliography of Canadian Theatre History: Supplement 1975-76*. Toronto: Playwrights Co-op, 1979. 73p.

Bennett, Joy; and Polson, Jim. *Irving Layton: A Bibliography 1935-1977*. Montreal: Concordia University Libraries, 1979. iv, 200p.

Bentley, D.M.R. *A Checklist of Literary Materials in "The Week": Toronto, 1883-1896*. Ottawa: Golden Dog Press, 1978. vi, 161p.

Brock Bibliography of Published Canadian Plays in English 1766 to 1978. Edited by Anton Wagner. Toronto: Playwrights Press, 1980. xi, 375p.

"Canadian Literature/Littérature canadienne." Edited by Bruce Nesbitt. *Journal of Canadian Fiction*, vol. 2, no. 2, 1973, pp. 97-159; vol. 3, no. 4, 1975, pp. 103-42; no. 17/18, 1976, pp. 70-302; no. 23, 1979, pp. 77-361.

"Canadian Literature 1971: An Annotated Bibliography/Une bibliographie avec commentaire." Edited by Susan Zimmering and Bruce Nesbitt. *Essays on Canadian Writing*, no. 9, 1977/78, pp. 190-326.

"Canadian Theatre Review" Index 1974-1977. Downsview, Ont.: Canadian Theatre Review, Faculty of Fine Arts, York University, 1977. 16p.

Cantin, Pierre; Harrington, Normand; Hudon, Jean-Paul. *Bibliographie de la critique de la littérature québécoise dans les revues des XIXe et XXe siècles*. 5 vols. Ottawa: Centre de recherche en civilization canadienne-française, Université d'Ottawa, 1979.

Colombo, John Robert. *CDN SF & F: A Bibliography of Canadian Science Fiction and Fantasy*. Toronto: Hounslow Press, 1979. viii, 85p.

Dictionnaire des oeuvres littéraires du Québec. Edited by Maurice Lemire. Montréal: Fides, 1978- .

Dionne, René. *Bibliographie de la littérature outaouaise et franco-ontarienne*. Ed. préliminaire. Ottawa: Université d'Ottawa, 1978. 91p.

Fee, Margery; and Cawker, Ruth. *Canadian Fiction: An Annotated Bibliography*. Toronto: Peter Martin Associates, 1976. xiii, 170p.

Gagné, Marc. *Gilles Vigneault: Bibliographie descriptive et critique, discographie, filmographie, iconographie, chronologie*. Québec: Presses de l'Université Laval, 1977. xxxii, 976p.

Gnarowski, Michael. *A Concise Bibliography of English-Canadian Literature*. Rev. ed. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1978. 145,[3]p.

______. *Theses and Dissertations in Canadian Literature (English): A Preliminary Check List*. Ottawa: Golden Dog Press, 1975. 41p.

Hayne, David M.; and Sirois, Antoine. "Preliminary Bibliography of Comparative Canadian Literature (English-Canadian and French-Canadian)." *Canadian Review of Comparative Literature/Revue canadienne de littérature comparée*, vol. 3, 1976- .

Lecker, Robert; and David, Jack. *The Annotated Bibliography of Canada's Major Authors*. Downsview, Ont.: ECW Press, 1979- .

Miska, John. *Canadian Prose Written in English, 1833-1980: A Bibliography of Secondary Material*. [Microfiche]. Lethbridge, Alta.: Microform Biblios, 1980. 292p.

Naaman, Antoine Y. *Répertoire des thèses littéraires canadiennes de 1921 à 1976*. Sherbrooke: Editions Naaman, 1978. 453p.

O'Neill, Patrick B. *Canadian Plays: A Supplementary Checklist to 1945*. Halifax: School of Library Service, Dalhousie University, 1978. 69ℓ.

Rinfret, Edouard. *Le théâtre canadien d'expression française: Répertoire analytique des origines à nos jours*. Montréal: Leméac, 1975- .

Robinson, Jill M. *Seas of Earth: An Annotated Bibliography of Saskatchewan Literature as it Relates to the Environment*. Regina. Canadian Plains Research Center, 1977. x, 139p.

Sedgwick, Dorothy. *A Bibliography of English-language Theatre and Drama in Canada 1800-1914*. Edmonton: Nineteenth Century Theatre Research, University of Alberta, 1976. 48p.

Stuart, Ross; and Vincent, Thomas B. *A Chronological Index of Locally Written Verse Published in the Newspapers and Magazines of Upper and Lower Canada, Maritime Canada, and Newfoundland through 1815*. Kingston, Ont.: Loyal Colonies Press, 1979. vii, 386p.

Translation

Delisle, Jean; and Albert, Lorraine. *Guide bibliographique du traducteur, rédacteur et terminologue/Bibliographic Guide for Translators, Writers and Terminologists*. Ottawa: University of Ottawa Press, 1979. 207p.

Index Translationum: Répertoire international des traductions/International Bibliography of Translations. Paris: UNESCO, 1948- .

"Letters in Canada." *University of Toronto Quarterly*, vol. 46, 1976/77- .

Stratford, Philip. *Bibliography of Canadian Books in Translation: French to English and English to French/Bibliographie de livres canadiens traduit de l'anglais au français et du français à l'anglais*. 2d ed. Ottawa: Humanities Research Council of Canada/Conseil canadien de recherches sur les humanités, 1977. xvii, 78p.

Music

Bradley, Ian L. *A Selected Bibliography of Musical Canadiana*. Rev. ed. Victoria: University of Victoria, 1976. 177p.

Calderisi, Maria. *Music Publishing in the Canadas, 1800-1867*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1981. x, 128, 124, x p.

Jarman, Lynne. *Canadian Music: A Selective Checklist, 1950-73/La musique canadienne: Une liste sélective, 1950-73*. Foreword by Helmut Kallmann. Toronto; Buffalo: University of Toronto Press, 1976. xiv, 170p.

Moogk, Edward B. *Roll Back the Years: History of Canadian Recorded Sound and its Legacy; Genesis to 1930*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1975. xii, 443p.

National Library of Canada. Resources Survey Section. *Music Resources in Canadian Collections.* Research Collections in Canadian Libraries, ser. 2, pt. 7. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1981. v, 103, 108, vi p.

Proctor, George A. *Sources in Canadian Music: A Bibliography of Bibliographies/Les sources de la musique canadienne: Une bibliographie des bibliographies.* 2d ed. Sackville, N.B.: Ralph Pickard Bell Library, Mount Allison University, 1979. 36p.

RILM Abstracts: Répertoire international de la littérature musicale/International Repertory of Music Literature. Flushing, N.Y.: Queens College, City University of New York, 1, 1967- .

THE SOCIAL SCIENCES

Anthropology, Sociology & Geography

Barter, Geraldine. *A Critically Annotated Bibliography of Works Published and Unpublished Relating to the Culture of French Newfoundlanders.* St. John's, Nfld.: Memorial University of Newfoundland, 1977. xiii, 52ℓ.

Fowke, Edith; and Carpenter, Carole Henderson. *A Bibliography of Canadian Folklore in English.* 2d ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, forthcoming.

Magee, Eleanor E.; and Fancy, Margaret. *Catalogue of Canadian Folk Music in the Mary Mellish Archibald Library and Other Special Collections.* Sackville, N.B.: Ralph Pickard Bell Library, Mount Allison University, 1974. ivℓ., 88p.

Mercer, Paul. *Newfoundland Songs and Ballads in Print, 1842-1974: A Title and First-line Index.* St. John's, Nfld.: Memorial University of Newfoundland, 1979. 343p.

Université de Moncton. Centre d'études acadiennes. *Inventaire général des sources documentaires sur les Acadiens.* 3 vols. Moncton, N.B.: Editions d'Acadie, 1975-1977.

Education

Auster, Ethel. *Reference Sources on Canadian Education: An Annotated Bibliography.* Toronto: OISE Press/Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1978. vii, 114p.

Bennett, Paul W. *Rediscovering Canadian History: A Teacher's Guide for the '80s.* Toronto: OISE Press/Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1980. 180p.

Blount, Gail. *Collective Bargaining in Canadian Education: An Annotated Bibliography.* Toronto: OISE Press/Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1975. x, 38p.

Corman, Linda. *Community Education in Canada: Annotated Bibliography.* Toronto: OISE Press/Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1975. xi, 55p.

Houyoux, Philippe. *Bibliographie de l'histoire de l'éducation au Québec des origines à 1960.* Trois-Rivières: Université du Québec à Trois-Rivières, 1978. viii, 227p.

Resource Guide for the Teaching of Canadian Literature. 10 vols. Toronto: Writers' Development Trust, 1977.

Robeson, Virginia; and Sylvester, Christine. *Teaching Canadian Studies: An Evaluation of Print Materials; Grades 1-13.* Toronto: OISE Press/Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1980. ix, 340p.

Robinson, Paul. *After Survival: A Teacher's Guide to Canadian Resources.* Toronto: Peter Martin Associates, 1977. 329p.

Shand, Patricia M. *Canadian Music: A Selective Guidelist for Teachers.* Toronto: Canadian Music Centre, 1978. viii, 186p.

History

Artibise, Alan F.J.; and Stelter, Gilbert A. *Canada's Urban Past: A Bibliography to 1980 and Guide to Canadian Urban Studies.* Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1981. xxxix, 396p.

Bates, Hilary; and Sherman, Robert. *Index to the Publications of the Ontario Historical Society 1899-1972.* Toronto: Ontario Historical Society, 1974. x, 175p.

Cooke, Owen A. *The Canadian Military Experience 1867-1967: A Bibliography/Bibliographie de la vie militaire au Canada 1867-1967.* Ottawa: Ministre de la Défense nationale, 1979. ix, 244p.

Craven, Paul; Forrest, Anne; and Traves, Tom. *Canadian Company Histories: A Checklist.* Rev. ed. Downsview, Ont.: Social Science Division, York University, 1978. 5, [75]ℓ.

Flitton, Marilyn. *Index to the "Canadian Monthly and National Review" and to "Rose-Belford's Canadian Monthly and National Review" 1872-1882.* Toronto: Bibliographical Society of Canada, 1976. xxiv, 151p.

Hamilton Working Class 1820-1977: A Bibliography. Compiled by Wayne Roberts. Hamilton, Ont.: Labour Studies Programme, McMaster University, 1978. 62p.

Harvey, Fernand; and Houle, Gilles. *Les classes sociales au Canada et au Québec: Bibliographie annotée.* Québec: Institut supérieur des sciences humaines, Université Laval, 1979. 282, 4p.

Index to "Saskatchewan History" vol. 1-30, 1948-1977. Saskatoon: Saskatchewan Archives Board, 1978. ii, 132p.

Lamonde, Yvan. *Guide d'historie du Québec.* Sillery, Que.: Boréal Express, 1976. 94p.

Richardson, W. George. *A Survey of Canadian Mining History.* Montreal: Canadian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy, 1974. [5], iii, 115p.

Southam, Peter; and Barry, Francine. *Caractéristiques de la pauvreté au Québec, 1940-73: Bibliographie.* Québec: Institut supérieur des sciences humaines, Université Laval, 1975. v, 221p.

Vaisey, G. Douglas. *The Labour Companion: A Bibliography of Canadian Labour History Based on Materials Printed from 1950-1975.* Halifax: Committee on Canadian Labour History, 1980. 126p.

Law

Boult, Reynald. *A Bibliography of Canadian Law/Bibliographie du droit canadien.* [2d] New ed. Ottawa: Canadian Law Information Council, 1977. xxii, 661p.

Canadian Law Information Council. *CLIC's Legal Materials Letter/Bullétin d'information juridique.* Ottawa: Canadian Law Information Council, no. 1, 1977- .

Dykstra, Gail S. *A Bibliography of Canadian Legal Materials/Une bibliographie de documentation juridique canadienne.* Toronto: Butterworths, 1977. xii, 113p.

Mayer, Katia Luce. *Criminologie canadienne bibliographie commentée: La criminaleté et l'administration de la justice criminelle au Canada/Canadian Criminology Annotated Bibliography: Crime and the Administration of Criminal Justice in Canada.* Ottawa: Solicitor General of Canada, 1977. xviii, 726p.

National Library of Canada. Resources Survey Division. *Checklist of Law Reports and Statutes in Canadian Law Libraries: 1, Canadian Law Reports/Listes de contrôle des recueils de jurisprudence et des statuts dans les bibliothèques de droit du Canada: 1, Recueils de jurisprudence du Canada.* Ottawa: Resources Survey Division, National Library of Canada, 1977. xv, 293p.

Politics, Economics & Business

Brown, Barbara E. *Canadian Business and Economics: A Guide to Sources of Information/Sources d'informations économiques et commerciales canadiennes.* Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, 1976. xviii, 636p. (New edition forthcoming).

Canadian Business Index. Toronto: Information Access; Micromedia, vol. 1, 1975/76- . (Formerly *Canadian Business Periodicals Index*).

Clement, Wallace, and Drache, Daniel. *A Practical Guide to Canadian Political Economy.* Toronto: James Lorimer, 1978. vi, 183p.

Dew, Ian F. *A Selected Annotated Bibliography of Rural Canada/Bibliographie annotée du Canada rural.* Ottawa: Central Mortgage and Housing Corporation, 1976. ix, 434p.

Dick, Trevor J.O. *Economic History of Canada: a Guide to Information Sources.* Detroit: Gale Research Co., 1978. iii, 174p.

Heggie, Grace F. *Canadian Political Parties, 1867-1968: A Historical Bibliography.* Toronto: Macmillan Co. of Canada, 1977. [6], 603p.

Lakos, Amos. *Comparative Provincial Politics of Canada: A Bibliography of Select Periodical Articles, 1970-1977.* Waterloo, Ont.: University of Waterloo Library, 1978. iii, 67p.

Maps

Donkin, Kate; and Finch, Rita. *Union List of Atlases in Ontario Universities.* Toronto: Council of Ontario Universities, 1976. [16], 253p.

Hayward, Robert J. *Fire Insurance Plans in the National Map Collection/Plans d'assurance-incendie de la collection nationale des cartes et plans.* Ottawa: National Map Collection, Public Archives of Canada, 1977. xxvi, 171p.

MacDonald, Ronald G. *Union List of Atlases: Provincial Archives, Simon Fraser University, University of British Columbia, U.B.C. Special Collections, University of Victoria, Vancouver City Archives, Vancouver Public Library.* N. p.: Triul, 1974. 155, 171.

Oppen, William A. *Riel Rebellions: A Cartographic History/Le récit cartographique des affaires Riel.* Special ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press in association with the Public Archives of Canada and the Canadian Government Publishing Centre, 1979. x, 109p.

Poulin, Guy; and Cadieux, Francine. *Index to Township Plans of the Canadian West/Index des plans* *des cantons de l'ouest canadien.* Ottawa: National Map Collection, Public Archives of Canada, 1974. xvii, 69p.

Public Archives of Canada. National Map Collection. *Catalogue of the National Map Collection, Public Archives of Canada/Catalogue de la collection nationale de cartes et plans, Archives publiques du Canada.* 16 vols. Boston: G.K. Hall, 1976.

Tessier, Yves. *Catalogue collectif des atlas des cartothèques universitaires du Québec.* Québec: n.p., 1976. 253l.

Verner, Coolie; and Stuart-Stubbs, Basil. *The Northpart of America.* Toronto: Academic Press Canada, 1979. xi, 292p.

THE SCIENCES

Science & Technology

A Bibliography of British Columbia Ornithology. Edited by R. Wayne Campbell. Victoria: British Columbia Provincial Museum, 1979- .

Dubé, Viateur. *Bibliographie sur la préhistoire de la psychiatrie canadienne du 19e siècle.* Trois-Rivières: Département de philosophie, Université du Québec à Trois-Rivières, 1976. Various paging.

Powell, Wyley L.; and Falby, Walter F. *Ontario Energy Catalogue: A Directory of Who's Doing What in Energy in Ontario and a Bibliography of Materials on Energy Available in Ontario.* Toronto: Ontario Library Association, 1977. 170, [30]p.

Roland, Charles G.; and Potter, Paul. *An Annotated Bibliography of Canadian Medical Periodicals 1826-1975.* Hamilton, Ont.: The Hannah Institute for the History of Medicine, 1979. xvii, 77p.

Sparrow, Christopher J.; and Foster, Leslie T. *An Annotated Bibliography of Canadian Air Pollution Literature.* Ottawa: Air Pollution Control Directorate, 1975. xiv, 270p.

WORKS CONSULTED

Aubrey, Irene E. "The National Library's Role in the Bibliographical Access to Canadian Children's Literature." In The Bibliographical Society of Canada. *Colloquium III/IIIe Colloque,* pp. 90-96. Toronto: Bibliographical Society of Canada, 1979.

Brault, Jean-Rémi. "La Bibliographie à la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec." In The Bibliographical Society of Canada. *Colloquium III/IIIe Colloque,* pp. 17-23. Toronto: Bibliographical Society of Canada, 1979.

Cooke, Geraldine A. "Bibliographical Activity on the North and the North West." *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada/Cahiers de la Société bibliographique du Canada* 17 (1978): 55-65.

Greig, Peter E. "Bibliographical Activity in the West and North West since 1974." *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada/Cahiers de la Société bibliographique du Canada* 17 (1978): 25-32.

Khan, Marta. "*Canadiana:* The National Bibliography." In The Bibliographical Society of Canada. *Colloquium III/IIIe Colloque,* pp. 9-14. Toronto: Bibliographical Society of Canada, 1979.

National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography, Vancouver, Canada, May 22-24, 1974. *Proceedings.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1977. xii, 514p.

"New Format for Printed Edition of *Canadiana.*" *National Library News* 12 (November 1980): 2-3.

Parker-Jervis, N. "The Western Canadiana Publications Project at the University of Alberta." *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada/Cahiers de la Société bibliographique du Canada* 17 (1978): 49-52.

Ryder, Dorothy E. "Canadian Reference Sources - A 10-year Overview." *Canadian Library Journal* 35 (August 1978): 289-293.

———. "The Canadian West & the North: A Bibliographical Overview." *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada/Cahiers de la Société bibliographique du Canada* 17 (1978): 66-73.

Strathern, Gloria M. "Western Canadiana Publications Project Bibliography." *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada/Cahiers de la Société bibliographique du Canada* 17 (1978): 53-54.

Wilson, Marion C. "*Canadiana:* Changes in the National Bibliography." *Canadian Library Journal* 34 (1977): 417-421.

Winearls, Joan. "Progress in Bibliographical Theory and Control for Maps." In The Bibliographical Society of Canada. *Colloquium III/IIIe Colloque,* pp. 106-114. Toronto: Bibliographical Society of Canada, 1979.

Wuetherick, Robert G. "The Bibliographical Control and Acquisition of Provincial Government Publications in Western Canada: The Challenge Facing the Bibliographical Society of Canada." *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada/Cahiers de la Société bibliographique du Canada* 17 (1978): 33-48.

II

SPECIFIC AREAS OMITTED AT THE 1974 CONFERENCE

NATIVE STUDIES

HARVEY A. McCUE
Associate Professor
Department of Native Studies
Trent University
Peterborough, Ontario K9J 7B8

INTRODUCTION

BIBLIOGRAPHIES on Canadian native people and native issues, like Native Studies at the post-secondary level, are on the increase. Currently some twelve universities and colleges across Canada offer degrees and programmes in Native Studies in the field of Arts and Education. Also, the University of Saskatchewan and Osgoode Hall Law Schools offer a programme of studies in native law, and one graduate programme in Native Studies is planned for 1981-82 at York University. To bolster this activity at the post-secondary level, the Ontario Ministry of Education plans to introduce a Curriculum Guideline on People of Native Ancestry at the senior level in Ontario secondary schools in 1981.

This brief outline of developments in the area of Native Studies is an indication of the growth in Canada of specialized needs in bibliographic material in Native Studies. Of course, interest in native people has always been evident in traditional academic areas such as Canadian History and Anthropology, and there is no reason to doubt that these interests will diminish in the foreseeable or distant future. All of which points to a sustained and growing demand for bibliographic materials.

Although Native Studies is a recent addition to university studies, bibliographies on native people have been in existence for some time. The needs of Native Studies, at least as they have been generally defined to this point in their development, have limited the usefulness of well-known ethnographic bibliographies on native people such as Murdock's *Ethnographic Bibliography of North America,* Hodge's *Handbook of the American Indian North of Mexico,* the Newberry Library *Dictionary Catalog of the Edward E. Ayer Collection of Americana and American Indians,* and the Author and Subject Catalogues of the Library of the Peabody Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology.

Generally, Native Studies since its beginnings at Trent University in Canada and the University of Minnesota in Minneapolis in 1969, and since then throughout Canada and the United States, has attempted to provide an Indian/Metis/Inuit perspective to historical and contemporary analysis of native issues. Several factors have encouraged the growth of the native perspective: a strengthened sense of identity as the nation's original people among native people throughout Canada; the reality of land claims and aboriginal rights, and native politics in the final half of the twentieth century; among academics and policy analysts recognition that more native input is required to ensure that the errors of previous programmes and policies to help native people will not be repeated; and new directions in the traditional academic disciplines of Anthropology and History to overcome the important, but occasionally uneven, earlier studies of native people.

The inter-disciplinarity of Native Studies is another important factor. Originally seen as growing out of the discipline of Anthropology, today most programmes and departments of Native Studies reflect a variety of disciplines in both the teaching faculty and courses taught. The inter-disciplinary nature of Native Studies has led to a search among faculty and students for more contemporary and inter-disciplinary bibliographies on native people and less reliance on the traditional anthropological bibliographies.

Efforts to blend an historical and contemporary approach in Native Studies are still in the making. Today, one is apt to discover more emphasis on the contemporary aspect of native issues than the historical. Difficult as it may be to predict when this emphasis will broaden, one can see that for now the traditional ethnographic bibliographies on native people are somewhat limited for Native Studies purposes. No one in Native Studies should be discouraged from using ethnographic bibliographies, for they do provide some extremely valuable reference materials, but to rely on them solely may create problems.

ETHNOGRAPHY

Bibliographies in the general area of ethnography include: the five volume *Ethnographic Bibliography of North America* by Murdock and O'Leary; Smith's *Indians of the United States and Canada: A bibliography;* and *Native Americans of North America. A bibliography based on collections in the Library of California State University, Northridge,* by Perkins and Tanis. In Canada, parallel efforts include Whiteside's *Aboriginal people: a selected bibliography,* a rather extensive collection which includes a wide variety of sources under special topics headings and listings of important unpublished and miscellaneous reports with a useful subject and author index, and *Occasional Papers in Anthropology #1: Three Atlantic Bibliographies* by McGee, Davis and Taft. Bibliographies with an emphasis on historical references include the *Bibliography of Ontario History: 1867-1976,* vol. I, published by the University of Toronto Press and *Northern Ontario. A Bibliography* by Spencer and Holland.

CULTURAL AREAS

A similar problem exists when one investigates bibliographies on specific culture areas. A strong ethnographic content with a smattering of historical references is contained in recent bibliographies from the Newberry Library Center for the History of the American Indian: by Helen H. Tanner on *The Ojibway,* and June Helm on *The Indians of the Subarctic.* Another example is *An Evaluative Ethno-historical Bibliography on Malecite Indians* M.R.P. Herisson. Other examples of culture area bibliographies include June Helm's *Subarctic Athapaskan Bibliography* and Wilson and Kew's *Bibliography of Anthropology of British Columbia: A selective list based on the Indians of British Columbia.*

La baie James des Amerindiens: bibliographie by Harvey Feit *et al.* and the *Brief Bibliography of Ontario Anthropology* by Kidd, Rogers, and Kenyon, are additional examples of bibliographies on native people which emphasize an ethnohistorical and ethnological survey of materials which relate to specific culture areas. *Chippewa and Dakota Indians* is a useful bibliography for ethnohistorical references on Chippewa (Ojibway) Indians. Although it concentrates on American sources, the fact that the Chippewa culture area extends throughout Canada and the North-Eastern United States makes it a necessary resource for Canadian Native Studies.

A companion to the James Bay bibliography is the *Boreal Forest Algonkian Ethnographic Bibliography* by Preston and Gehret. For useful references on the Yukon, the *Yukon Bibliography* by Lotz is helpful. For Labrador the *Bibliography of the Quebec-Labrador Peninsula* by Cooke and Fabien is invaluable.

AREA BIBLIOGRAPHIES

Several area bibliographies have appeared recently. Native education, art and folklore, native authors, films, and legal history are some examples.

I.R. Brooks's *A Bibliography of Native Education* is perhaps the most extensive addition to bibliographies on native education. The ERIC *American Indian Education: A Selected Bibliography* and the additional "Supplements" and the *Annotated Bibliography of articles pertaining to Native North Americans* by the Indian and Northern Education programme at the University of Saskatchewan include many useful items for teachers in Native Studies. A potpourri of reference material is included in the *Resource Materials pertaining to Indian, Inuit, and Métis Cultures* which was produced jointly by the Native Education Branch and School Library Services Branch of the Manitoba Department of Education.

Ian Bradley's *A bibliography of Canadian Native arts: Indian and Eskimo arts, crafts, dance and music* is an invaluable addition to Native Studies. *The Bibliography of Articles and Papers on North American Indian Art* by Harding and Bolling is a companion piece. Indian folklore is covered thoroughly by J.C. Ullom's *Folklore of North American Indians: an annotated bibliography.* This bibliography contains references by culture areas and covers the entire continent and most Indian cultures.

Recent additions to references in Native Studies are bibliographies of native authors. Two examples can be identified: *Indian and Inuit Authors* by the National Library of Canada and Hirschfelder's *American Indian and Eskimo Authors.* Both bibliographies contain useful references of works in print, mainly in book form, by native writers. *About Indians* by Indian and Northern Affairs is an annotated bibliography of books including those by native authors and each book is categorized by a school grade level.

Another important resource for Native Studies is bibliographies of films on Indian and Inuit topics. *Films on Indians and Inuit of North America: 1965-1978* by S.J. Rothwell and Jim Page's *Seeing Ourselves, Films for Canadian Studies* together contain a comprehensive listing of films on native people. *The Multi-Media Resource List, Eskimos and Indians* by the Ontario Department of Education is another useful aid for a variety of media treatments of native people.

The explosion in legal research brought about by land claims, treaty research, and aboriginal rights has resulted in some important bibliographies. The most notable in this field is the *Indian Claims in Canada* and its companion *Indian Claims in Canada: Supplementary Bibliography* by the National Library. Both works represent a substantial listing of historical references which are pertinent to any study of the legal history of Canadian Indians.

NATIVE BIBLIOGRAPHIES

Several bibliographies have appeared recently which have been produced by native people. These include the previously-mentioned *Aboriginal People: A selected Bibliography* Vol. I by Whiteside; *Bibliography of the Ojibway-Cree Resource Centre* by the Ojibway-Cree Resource Centre in Timmins, Ontario; the National Indian Brotherhood's *Annotated List of Holdings;* and in the United States, *Index to Literature on the American Indian* in four volumes from 1970-1973 inclusive, edited by Jeannette Henry.

CONTEMPORARY LISTINGS

Several bibliographies exist which are, perhaps, the most useful in Native Studies because of their focus on the contemporary reference material on native people and native issues. This contemporary focus should contribute to the development of course curricula in Native Studies at any school level. *A Canadian Indian Bibliography. 1960-1970* by Abler and Weaver is extremely useful in this regard, and the addition of pertinent case law on Canadian Indians is most helpful. A less ambitious but still useful contribution is the *Bibliography on Canadian Indians. 1960-1972* by Professor Joan Ryan. An American bibliography with a contemporary emphasis is Hodge's *A Bibliography of Contemporary North American Indians,* an excellent companion to the Canadian works.

PERIODICALS AND THESES

In this section the *Canadian Periodical Index* is an invaluable source for most contemporary issues in Native Studies. The headings used to categorize materials in the *Index* include Indian and Inuit topics which are broken down into sub-topics such as Education, Health, Housing and so on. In 1970 the Princeton University Library published *American Indian Periodicals in the Princeton University Library: A preliminary list* which serves as a useful guide to the availability of native journals and newspapers in North America. The somewhat unsteady foundation and localized nature of many native periodicals and newspapers results in considerable obstacles for any bibliographic endeavour in this area. Periodical lists appear in several of the previously-mentioned bibliographies including those by Hodge, Whiteside, and Abler and Weaver.

A valuable resource to research in Native Studies is supplied by *The American Indian In Graduate Studies: A Bibliography of theses and dissertations* by F.J. Dockstader and more recently by *North American Indian: Dissertation Index* which is a comprehensive index of dissertations on Indians during the period 1904-1976.

INUIT BIBLIOGRAPHIES

Although the Inuit are not as exhaustively surveyed as are Indians in bibliographies, several previously-mentioned bibliographies do contain references to the Inuit and one would be well-advised to explore the Arctic Institute's *Catalogue of the Library of the Arctic Institute of North America. A Selected and Annotated Bibliography on the Sociology of Eskimo Education* by Carney and Ferguson is an important addition to the references on native education. *The Alaska Eskimos* by Hippler and Wood and Hippler's *Eskimo Acculturation are valuable tools for both ethnographic sources and modernization studies of the Inuit in the Canadian Arctic and Alaska.* A somewhat smaller *Eskimos: A Bibliography* compiled by V.P. Arora contains some useful items. *Koning-Pacific Eskimo Bibliography* by Clark is perhaps too specialized for Native Studies purposes.

CONCLUSION

Because Native Studies is so new, it is impossible at this time to identify with complete certainty which bibliographies should be included in this presentation. Any omissions represent an arbitrary decision on my part to include only materials of primary importance to Native Studies. Due to the local nature of some bibliographies and many which are unpublished, the presentation remains somewhat incomplete. Still, it is possible to identify gaps in what is readily available today.

Although I have suggested that the traditional ethnographic bibliographies have limited value in Native Studies, as courses of study expand and programmes and departments in Native Studies establish more balance in the contemporary-historical blend, the value of these bibliographies will increase substantially. With this in mind as an area for future consideration, additional ethnographic bibliographies on Indian culture areas which have not been adequately covered – such as the Indians of the Canadian Plains, the North-west Coast, and the Northwest Territories – will be required. Area bibliographies such as the *Catalogue of the Library of the Arctic Institute of North America* will require supplements to bring them up to date.

The focus on contemporary issues will continue to result in the demand for Canadian bibliographies on specific topics such as Urbanization Studies, Health, Reserve and Community Studies, and Native Politics, to name only a few. For example, economic development has given adequate treatment in the United States in *Economic Development of American Indian and Eskimos: 1930 through 1967* by Marjorie Snodgrass, but nothing similar exists in Canada. Some of these topics have received some attention in existing bibliographies but the demands of Native Studies for contemporary inter-disciplinary references emphasize a need for more specialized topic area bibliographies.

The value of archival material to course-work in Native Studies has been somewhat untested to this point. This should change as graduate studies in Native Studies begin to take shape. Provincial archives would do well to follow the lead of the Public Archives in Ottawa to prepare bibliographies of archival material pertinent to native history and native people. The importance of the Record Group 10 catalogue and Manuscript 19 catalogue of the Public Archives has long been recognized by academics and researchers, native and non-native alike. A parallel need exists to include bibliographies of museum holdings in native materials.

The need for a bibliography on the Metis and non-status Indians is long overdue. Several Canadian bibliographies include references to Metis and non-status Indians but the demand exists for a specialized bibliography. As more and more attention among native people is given to the revitalization and strengthening of Indian and Inuit cultures in Canada, the need for bibliographies of oral references will be felt in Native Studies. Many reserves and special interest groups, not to mention a variety of scholars working in the field, have accumulated what I would consider to be a massive amount of tape recordings of invaluable oral history and culture. A bibliography of these sources would be an invaluable tool to many people and possibly prevent the destruction or permanent loss of such recordings.

As a final note, bibliographies of government and native organizations' published and unpublished reports on native topics would be welcome additions to Native Studies. One would want to see included in such bibliographies the reports and papers of the many special and public interest groups which have recently been involved in the political and social development of native people.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

ABLER, THOMAS S.; and WEAVER, SALLY, M. *A Canadian Indian Bibliography. 1960-1970.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1974.

AMERICAN INDIAN EDUCATION A Selected Bibliography. Las Cruces, N.M.: New Mexico State University, 1969. See also "Supplements" Nos. 1-6.

ARCTIC INSTITUTE OF NORTH AMERICA. *Catalogue of the Library of the Arctic Institute of North America.* 4 vols. Boston: G.K. Hall, 1968. The "First Supplement" was published in 1971.

ARORA, V.P. *Eskimos. A Bibliography.* Regina: Bibliographic Services Division, Provincial Library, 1972.

BISHOP, OLGA, B.; IRWIN, BARBARA I.; and MILLER, CLARA G. *Bibliography of Ontario History. 1867-1976.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, vol. 1, 1980.

BRADLEY, IAN L. *A bibliography of Canadian Native arts: Indian and Eskimo arts, crafts, dance and music.* Victoria: GLC Publishers, 1977.

BROOKS, I.R. *A Bibliography of Native Education.* Office of Educational Development, University of Calgary, 1976.

BUSH, A.L.; and FRASER, ROBERT S. *American Indian Periodicals in the Princeton University Library: A preliminary list.* Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Library, 1970.

CANADIAN INDIAN RIGHTS COMMISSION. *Indian Claims in Canada. Supplementary Bibliography.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1979.

CARNEY, R.J.; and FERGUSON, W.O. *A Selected and Annotated Bibliography on the Sociology of Eskimo Education.* Occasional Publication, no. 2. Boreal Institute, University of Alberta, 1965.

CLARK, DONALD W. *Koning-Pacific Eskimo Bibliography.* Archeological Survey of Canada Paper, no. 35. Ottawa: National Museum of Man, 1975.

COOKE, ALAN; and FABIEN, CARON. *Bibliography of the Quebec-Labrador Peninsula.* 2 vols. Boston: G.K. Hall, 1968.

DOCKSTADER, FREDRICK J. *The American Indian in Graduate Studies: A Bibliography of Theses and Dissertations.* New York: Museum of the American Indian, Heye Foundation, 1957.

FEIT, HARVEY A. et al. *La baie James des Amérindiens: bibliographie.* Recherches Amérindiennes au Québec, vol. 2, spécial 1, juin 1972. 2e edition, juillet, 1974.

HARDING, A.D.; and BOLLING, P. *Bibliography of Articles and Papers on North American Indian Art.* New York: Klaus Reprint Co., 1969.

HELM, JUNE. *Subarctic Athapaskan Bibliography.* University of Iowa, 1973.

———. *The Indians of the Subarctic: A Critical Bibliography.* Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1976.

HENRY, JEANNETTE, ed. *Index to Literature on the American Indian. 1970.* San Francisco: Indian Historical Press, 1972. See additional volumes for 1971, 1972, 1973.

HERISSON, M.R.P. *An Evaluative Ethnohistorical bibliography on the Malecite Indians.* Ethnology Division Paper, no. 16. Ottawa: National Museum of Man, 1974.

HIPPLER, A.E. *Eskimo Acculturation. A Selected, Annotated Bibliography of Alaskan and Other Eskimo Acculturation Studies.* Institute of Social, Economic and Government Research, University of Alaska, 1970.

HIPPLER, A.E.; and WOOD, J.R. *The Alaskan Eskimos. A Selected, Annotated Bibliography.* Institute of Social and Economic Research, University of Alaska, 1977.

HIRSCHFELDER, ARLENE B. *American Indian and Eskimo Authors: A comprehensive bibliography.* New York: Association on American Indian Affairs, 1973.

HODGE, F.W., ed. *Handbook of the American Indian North of Mexico.* 2 vols. Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 30, Smithsonian Institution, 1907-1910.

HODGE, WILLIAM. *A Bibliography of Contemporary North American Indians.* New York: Interland Publishing, 1976.

INDIAN AND NORTHERN AFFAIRS. *About Indians.* 4th ed. Ottawa: Indian and Eskimo Affairs Program, 1977.

INDIAN CLAIMS COMMISSION. *Indian Claims in Canada.* Ottawa: Information Canada, 1975.

KIDD, K.E.; ROGERS, E.S.; and KENYON, W. *Brief Bibliography of Ontario Anthropology.* Art and Archaeology Occasional Paper 7. Toronto: Royal Ontario Museum, University of Toronto Press, 1964.

LOTZ, JIM R. *Yukon Bibliography.* Ottawa: North Co-ordination and Research Centre, Department of Northern Affairs and National Resources, 1964.

MANITOBA. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION. *Resource Material pertaining to Indian, Inuit, and Metis Cultures.* Winnipeg: Native Education Branch and School Library Services Branch, Department of Education, 1974.

MCGEE JR., H.F.; DAVIS, S.A.; and TAFT, M. *Occasional Papers in Anthropology #1: Three Atlantic Bibliographies.* Department of Anthropology. St Mary's University, 1975.

MINNESOTA HISTORICAL SOCIETY. *Chippewa and Dakota Indians: A subject catalog of Books, Pamphlets, Periodical Articles, and Manuscripts in the Minnesota Historical Society.* St. Paul: Minnesota Historical Society, 1969.

MURDOCK, GEORGE P. *Ethnographic Bibliography of North America.* 3rd ed. New Haven: Human Relations Area Files, 1960.

MURDOCK, GEORGE P.; and O'LEARY, TIMOTHY J. *Ethnographic Bibliography of North America.* 5 vols. New Haven: Human Relations Area Files, 1975.

NATIONAL INDIAN BROTHERHOOD. *Annotated List of Holdings.* Ottawa, 1973. (mimeo)

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF CANADA. *Indian-Inuit Authors; an Annotated Bibliography.* Ottawa: Information Canada, 1974.

NEWBERRY LIBRARY, CHICAGO. *Dictionary Catalog of the Edward E. Ayer Collection of Americana and American Indians.* 16 vols. Boston: G.K. Hall, 1961.

OJIBWAY-CREE RESOURCE CENTRE. *Bibliography of the Ojibway-Cree Resource Centre.* Timmins, 1976.

ONTARIO. Department of Education. *Multi-Media Resource Lists: Eskimos and Indians.* Toronto, 1969.

Ontario Since 1867; A Bibliography. Ontario Historical Studies Series. Toronto: Ministry of Colleges and Universities, 1973.

PAGE, JAMES E. *Seeing Ourselves. Films for Canadian Studies.* Ottawa: National Film Board of Canada, 1979.

PEABODY MUSEUM LIBRARY. *Catalogue of the Library of the Peabody Museum of Archaeology and Ethnology: Authors.* 26 vols. Boston: Hall, 1963. The "First Supplement" (6 vols.) and "Second Supplement" (2 vols.) were published in 1970 and 1971 respectively.

PERKINS, D.; and TANIS, N. *Native Americans of North America. A bibliography based on the collection in the library of California State University, Northridge.* Northridge: California State University, 1975.

PRESTON, R.J.; and GEHRET, K.L. *Boreal Forest Algonkian Ethnographic Bibliography.* Ottawa: Ethnology Division, National Museum of Man, 1970. (unpublished paper)

PUBLIC ARCHIVES, OTTAWA. *Preliminary Inventory: Manuscript Group 19, Fur Trade and Indians, 1763-1867.* Ottawa, 1954.

______. *Preliminary Inventory: Record Group 10, Indian Affairs.* Ottawa, 1951. Rev. ed. 1973.

______. *Records relating to Indian Affairs (RG10), No. 1.* Ottawa: General Inventory Series, Public Records Division, 1975.

ROTHWELL, S.J. *Films on Indians and Inuit of North America, 1965-1978.* Ottawa: Indian and Inuit Affairs, 1978.

RYAN, JOAN. ***Bibliography on Canadian Indians. 1960-1972.*** Calgary: University of Calgary, 1972. (mimeo)

SASKATCHEWAN. ***Indians of the Americas: A bibliography.*** Regina: Provincial Library, 1973.

SASKATCHEWAN UNIVERSITY. INDIAN AND NORTHERN EDUCATION PROGRAM. ***Annotated Bibliography of articles pertaining to Native North Americans.*** Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan, 1972.

SMITH, D.G., ed. ***Indians of the United States and Canada. A bibliography. California: Clio Press, 1974.***

SNODGRASS, MARJORIE P. ***Economic Development of American Indians and Eskimos: 1930 through 1967.*** Bibliographic Series, no. 10. Washington, D.C.: Departmental Library, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1968.

SPENCER, LORAINE, and HOLLAND, SUSAN. ***Northern Ontario. A bibliography.*** Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1968.

TANNER, HELEN H. *The Ojibway: A Critical Bibliography.* Bloomington: University of Indiana Press, 1976.

ULLOM, J.C. ***Folklore of North American Indians: an annotated bibliography.*** Washington, D.C.: Library of Congress, 1969.

UNIVERSITY MICROFILMS INTERNATIONAL. ***North American Indians: Dissertation index, 1904-1976.*** Ann Arbor, 1977.

WHITESIDE, DON. ***Aboriginal people: A selected bibliography.*** Vol. I. Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood, 1973.

WILSON, DUFF, and KEW, MICHAEL. ***Bibliography of Anthropology of British Columbia: A Selective list based on the Indians of British Columbia.*** Vancouver: University of British Columbia, 1973. (mimeo)

NOTE

Participants at this session of the Conference recognized the need for the following bibliographies, and wish to draw this list to the attention of those interested in compiling and funding bibliographies in this field:

a Ethnographic bibliographies on Indian culture in various areas of Canada, such as the Canadian Plains, the North-West Coast, the Northwest Territories, etc.;

b Bibliographies on specialized topics, such as urbanization studies, health, reserve and community studies, native politics, and economic development;

c Bibliographies on Métis and non-status Indians;

d Bibliographies of oral studies;

e Bibliographies of published and unpublished reports of the federal and provincial governments, and of reports of native organizations.

SOME THOUGHTS ABOUT THE PRESENT STATE OF BIBLIOGRAPHY IN THE AREA OF CANADIAN ETHNIC STUDIES

JUDY YOUNG
Senior Program Officer
Multiculturalism Directorate, Secretary of State Department
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0M5

"IT WOULD BE PRESUMPTUOUS for us (and I am using the Royal "we" of the Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism) to try to study all the questions raised by the existence in Canada of 'other ethnic groups,' that is those whose ethnic origin is neither French nor British, in a single volume."[1] These auspicious words introduce Book IV of the Report of the famous commision investigating Canada's culture, and in particular, the "ethnic" part of Canadian culture. After much research, many reports by experts in a variety of disciplines, and 223 pages of discussion, the Commission reached the following conclusion: "A striking fact which emerged from our research into the cultural groups other than the British and French in Canadian society is that so little is known about the subject."[2]

The year was 1969. Twelve years later, a recent issue of the *Journal of Canadian Studies* (Fall 1980) lists fourteen new titles in the area of sociology, of which six are clearly in the area of Ethnic Studies (five relating to the Arabs, Greeks, Mennonites, Norwegians and Blacks in Canada, one to cultural pluralism) and four more very likely include ethnicity among the issues discussed.[3] *Canadian Ethnic Studies,* the journal published by the Research Centre for Canadian Ethnic Studies at the University of Calgary for the Canadian Ethnic Studies Association, is in its twelfth year of publication and in virtually all areas of the arts, the humanities and the social sciences in Canada the "striking fact" appears to be that a great deal is being published in the area of Ethnic Studies, multiculturalism, cultural pluralism (or whatever name is used). Last but not least, this conference also felt the need for delineating the present state of bibliographical activity in relation to Ethnic Studies, presumably because of the realization that there is plenty of material waiting for the bibliographer. The situation since 1969 has changed drastically so that the problem is not lack of materials but lack of information about the nature and whereabouts of the available material.

What then is the nature of this material? What is meant by "ethnic studies"? The B and B Commission, although it did not define it, assumed that it was the study of "all the questions raised by the existence in Canada of 'other ethnic groups'," excluding the French and the British. Howard Palmer, historian at the University of Calgary and one of the founding members of the Canadian Ethnic Studies Association (also the author of a number of books and articles on ethnicity in Canada) defines the area in a similar way, not because the French, British and Natives (who are not discussed by the B and B Commission in Book IV) are not also ethnic groups but because scholars have given these areas more attention in the past.

Professor Symons, in the *Report of the Commission on Canadian Studies,* (published in 1975)[4], on the other hand, takes the viewpoint that Ethnic Studies is more than just a study of ethnic groups in Canada. In this he follows Professor Cornelius Jaenen who defined Ethnic Studies (in 1975) very broadly: "I would include within the compass of ethnic studies such socially discernible and historically documented experiences as immigration history, intergroup relations, race relations, aboriginal history as well as the study of individual ethnic groups. It flows over into the disciplines of sociology, political science, slavic studies, linguistics, demography, psychology, human geography, ethnology, anthropology, law and the fine arts." "The proposition I want to advance," he continues, "is . . . that Canadian studies must necessarily incorporate a large and substantial component of Ethnic Studies."[5]

Somewhere between these two extremes lies the area of ethnic studies: the narrow definition which ties it to the non-French and non-British groups alone is inadequate, while the other is so broad that, at least from the bibliographer's point of view, the field to be covered cannot be circumscribed with any precision.

Ethnicity is a very complex phenomenon; all Canadians have an ethnic origin but "ethnic identification, even when ethnic heritage is unmixed or fully understood, is a matter of individual choice."[6] A Sicilian may not wish to be considered an Italian, a German speaking Mennonite from Russia may prefer to be identified simply as a Mennonite, a French-speaking inhabitant of New Brunswick may refer to himself or herself as an Acadian (but of course, if you look under "Acadian" in the *Harvard Encyclopedia* you will not find a word about the New Brunswick Acadians, only their Louisiana cousins, and for Canadian Acadians you have to look under "French-Canada").

Not only is it difficult to be definite about an individual's ethnicity; an ethnic group's self-perception and its characterization by its own members and others is relative, depending on such variables as common geographic origin, race, language or dialect, religious faith, shared values, traditions and food habits, literature, art, folklore and music, special interest in regard to politics in the homeland and the country of immigration, settlement patterns, institutions that serve and maintain the group, an internal sense of distinctiveness and an external perception of distinctiveness.[7]

In addition to the problems of individual and group identification, the student of Ethnic Studies must investigate such areas as the relationship of groups to each other and the society around them; the history of the immigration and development of groups in Canada; government policies in relation to immigration and the social welfare of immigrants; past and present economic trends; the political situation of the home countries of immigrants as well as of Canada; human rights; racism, and discrimination. Consideration must also be given to such concepts as culture, race, assimilation, acculturation, ghettoization, ethnocentrism, separatism, cultural pluralism, power, colonization, authority, identity and many others. It is evident, therefore, that Ethnic Studies involve familiarity with a number of disciplines such as: history, political science, sociology, economics, psychology, linguistics, the fine arts and anthropology – to name the major ones.

Though such an interpretation of Ethnic Studies may be self-evident now, it has only recently become so. In 1973 two of the best-known scholars in the area of Ethnic Studies – Howard Palmer and Harold Tropper – commented on the "filial-pietous generalities" in much of the material available on ethnic groups and ethnicity up to that time. It is not within the scope of this paper to analyze in detail the development of Ethnic Studies in Canada (a task excellently accomplished in Palmer's paper "History and Present State of Ethnic Studies in Canada"[8] but it is of interest from the bibliographic point of view to note the tremendous increase in research in the last several years, ranging over several disciplines. The most notable expansion has been in the area of education but significant new works have been published in sociology, literature (including children's literature), political science and even history.[9] Historians, apparently, have been the most conservative about what constitutes the history of Canada. More works have also been published about ethnic groups, particularly such groups that had been previously under-represented, either because they were recent arrivals or because they had not made their presence felt for some other reason (had lacked the desire for group identification, as in the case of the Germans or not been here in sufficient numbers, as in the case of the Haitians).[10]

As can be seen from this brief summary Ethnic Studies is a large and diverse field encompassing many disciplines in the humanities, social sciences and the arts. I have also tried to indicate that in the last decade or so a tremendous number of publications have seen the light of day. The list of publications which received some kind of assistance from the Multiculturalism Directorate during the last ten years contains about 300 titles with subject areas such as history, memoirs, poetry, fiction, children's literature, biography, teaching aids, sociology, folklore, architecture, and bibliography, and covering some 50 ethnic groups.

Having looked at the nature of the available material, let us return to the question of the whereabouts and the accessibility of this material and thus to the existence of bibliographies in this area. The essential characteristics of a bibliography are: exact delimitation of the field and completeness of the listing. It is obvious from the above that, in the case of Canadian Ethnic Studies these goals are impossible to achieve. One either has to limit the field severely (and on the basis of what criteria?) or be satisfied with existing bibliographic listings, let us say regional or subject bibliographies, which include ethnic materials without singling them out in any way. Naturally, the second option defeats the whole purpose of an area bibliography and scholars and students of Ethnic Studies would lose a most essential research tool.

To try the first option then, and in order to arrive at a working definition, I have limited the field to the study of recognizably distinct minority groups in the Canadian context. Such a definition includes the British (or Anglo-Celtic) and the French groups when they are in a minority situation, as for instance the English in Quebec or the French minorities outside of Quebec. Categories into which such an ethnic studies bibliography might be divided could be:

1 Works by ethnic groups (primary materials such as letters, memoirs and other written records);
2 works about ethnic groups (secondary materials);
3 bibliographies of works by or about ethnic groups (tertiary materials).
In addition to the listing of published materials, unpublished sources, location of archives and lists of journals and associations should also be included.

There still remain many problems in compiling such a bibliography. The most important among these are the following: the variety of languages in which many of the published (and unpublished) materials are written; out of the way, inaccessible publications; lack of written records; secretiveness of individuals or groups; intra-group conflict; group dispersal (or its opposite, ethnogenesis); difficulty of defining group identity or affiliation; incomplete or inaccurate listings in already existing bibliographies.

Although there is no comprehensive bibliography in the area of Ethnic Studies, many useful works do exist. I have tried to indicate the range of these in a selected list at the end of my paper so I shall limit myself to a few comments about them.

Canadiana, of course, lists all publications deposited with the National Library. However, a number of ethnic publications are not deposited and, in general, it is difficult to find the relevant materials. This is also true for other general bibliographies covering large areas or certain disciplines such as history or the social sciences. Douglas Lochhead's *Bibliography of Canadian Bibliographies* also contains some entries on ethnic groups and these are accessible through Peter Greig's index to the volume. As far as I could see, foreign language bibliographies have not been included, nor have bibliographies in monographs, theses or periodical articles. These are serious omissions from the point of view of Ethnic Studies as good bibliographies are often included in important monographs and many ethnic group bibliographies have been published in periodicals and other languages. On the other hand, Lochhead does include certain theses such as Ruth Ann McIntyre's "The Hutterites in North America: a bibliography of the resources available in the Toronto Public Library and the Library of the University of Toronto" (2:1400).

There have been some useful bibliographies compiled by the Department of Citizenship and Immigration, later Manpower and Immigration, listing publications from 1920 into the 1960's. The Research Division of that department, under the directorships of Dr. Frank Jones, Dr. Frank Vallee and Dr. Zenon Sametz placed particular emphasis on basic bibliographic research. Frank Darknell, Mildred Schwartz and particularly Charlotte de Hesse prepared extensive bibliographies which are listed at the back of this paper. It would probably be an interesting sociological study to examine the kind of material that was included in these sometimes extensive listings. In most of them the European groups figure very prominently (even as late as 1960); in the earlier ones many publications dealing with various social and medical problems are included (an indication that immigrants were considered problems?).

The most comprehensive ethnic groups bibliography is Andrew Gregorovich's *Canadian Ethnic Groups Bibliography* (1972). It has more than 2000 entries about 50 groups and despite its title contains sections about related issues such as ethnicity, multiculturalism, human rights, language, etc. Mr. Gregorovich is working on a revised and expanded version of this most useful resource which should be completed by next year and will be about twice as big as the first edition.

Two very good bibliographic sources on Ethnic Studies have been provided by two journals: the *University of Toronto Quarterly* and *Canadian Ethnic Studies*. The former publishes the annual *Letters in Canada* which has had a section on "Publications in Other Languages" since 1937, started by Watson Kirkconnell. This section has been a most useful source since it specifically listed publications not written in French or English, although in recent years the emphasis has been on Slavic language titles and Ukrainian in particular. Regrettably, the latest issue of *Letters in Canada* seems not to have included this section. After a 40-year record it would be a great pity to lose this unique resource.

Canadian Ethnic Studies, the journal of the association of the same name, was started in 1969 with a bibliographic issue and has continued to be the major source of ethnic studies bibliographies. According to Andrew Gregorovich this journal has listed more than a quarter of all existing ethnic studies items.

Naturally, other journals devoted to the various disciplines in the social sciences and humanities have also published bibliographies with ethnic items but these are not identified as such (the *Canadian Historical Review*, for instance, or the *Canadian Review of Sociology and Anthropology*, and the *Canadian Journal of Sociology*).

The largest number of bibliographies exist in relation to ethnic groups. Many groups have published a great deal about themselves in Canada, particularly those groups which have been here a long time. However, length of stay in Canada or size of community are not necessarily reflected in the number of bibliographies: the Ukrainians have published more than the Germans, for instance, although they have not been in Canada as long and numerically they are a much smaller group. (There is at the moment a major German Canadiana bibliography in preparation by Professor Froeschle of the University of Toronto.) Central and East European groups in general have many bibliographies: some of the earliest significant annual listings were *Slavica Canadiana* (1952-72) and *Ukrainica Canadiana* (1953-72).

It is interesting to note that some sub-groups within larger groups have considerably more written about them than the parent group, including bibliographic information. So, for instance, there are more sources about the Doukhobors than about Russians; more about German-speaking Mennonites than other German-speaking groups.

Perhaps the greatest gaps exist in the area of bibliographies organized by subject or discipline. In education the field is now covered reasonably well; in literature there is John Miska's bibliography (1980) and Leuba Bailey's resource guide. A comprehensive bibliography of Canadian folklore has just been published by the University of Toronto Press.

There are many unpublished listings, several of them commissioned by the Multiculturalism Directorate, such as a *Selected Bibliography on Ethnic Groups in Quebec* or listings of Black, Hungarian, Polish, Spanish and Urdu literary works in Canada. Occasionally one comes across useful listings from unexpected sources, such as the Children's Book Centre in Toronto which has compiled a list of *Canadian Multicultural Books for Children*.

Finally, mention should be made of the many American sources which contain information relevant to Canada, such as the *American Jewish Year Book* which contains the most comprehensive listing of Canadian Jewish items. Canadian Studies are also included in the curricula of many universities in other countries and listings of research at these should provide an interesting comparative perspective to Canadian Ethnic Studies.

All in all, this is a rich and varied field with many problems but also many exciting challenges.

I would like to acknowledge the assistance of advice of many individuals:
Professor MICHAEL BATTS of the University of British Columbia,
Dr. IVAN HALASZ DE BEKY and Mr. ANDREW GREGOROVICH of the University of Toronto,
Mr. PETER GREIG of the National Library,
Mr. MYRON MOMRYK of the Ethnic Archives,
Professor HOWARD PALMER of the University of Calgary,
Ms. LILLIAN RIDER of McGill University,
Mr. LAWRENCE TAPPER of the Ethnic Archives,
Mrs. MARIE ZIELINSKI of the Multilingual Biblioservice of the National Library, and
Mr. STAN ZYBALA of the Multiculturalism Directorate, Department of the Secretary of State.

REFERENCES

1 *Report of the Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism. Book IV. The Cultural Contribution of the Other Ethnic Groups.* Ottawa: 1973, p. xxv.

2 *Royal Commission. Book IV,* p. 225.

3 *Journal of Canadian Studies* 15 (1980): 120-121.

4 *To Know Ourselves.* Ottawa: Association of Universities and Colleges of Canada, p. 81ff.

5 "Ethnic Studies: An Integral Part of Canadian Studies." In *Identities. The Impact of Ethnicity on Canadian Society.* Edited by Wsevolod Isajiw. Toronto: Peter Martin Associates, 1977, p. xi.

6 *Harvard Encyclopedia of American Groups.* Cambridge, Mass. and London, England: The Bellknap Press of Harvard University Press, 1980, p. vii.

7 Categories used in the Introduction to the *Harvard Encyclopedia,* p. vi.

8 *Identities. The Impact of Ethnicity on Canadian Society,* pp. 167-183.

9 Recent publications relating to education include Dean Wood's *Multicultural Canada.* Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1978; *Whose Culture? Whose Heritage? Ethnicity Within Canadian Social Studies Curricula* by Walter Werner and others. Faculty of Education, UBC, 1977; various resource guides and teachers' guides such as the guide for the grades 1 and 2 reader series *Kids of Canada.* James Lorimer, 1981.

Other significant works in sociology and political science are: Anderson, Alan B.; and Frideres, James S. *Ethnicity in Canada. Theoretical Perspectives.* Toronto: Butterworths, 1981.

Dahlie, Jorgen; and Fernando, Tissa, eds. *Ethnicity, Power and Politics.* Toronto: Methuen, 1981.

Juteau Lee, Danielle. *Frontières ethniques en devenir. Emerging Ethnic Boundaries.* Ottawa: University of Ottawa Press, 1977.

In children's literature:

Lim, Sing. *West Coast Chinese Boy.* Montreal: Tundra Books, 1979; *The Folktale Library.* Toronto: Kids Can Press, 1977-80.

10 Some examples: Walker, James W. St. G. *A History of Blacks in Canada – A Study Guide for Teachers and Students.* Hull: Canadian Government Publishing Centre, 1980.

Ujimoto, Victor and Hirabayashi, Gordon. *Visible Minorities and Multiculturalism. Asians in Canada.* Toronto: Butterworths, 1980.

Tepper, Elliot, ed. *Southeast Asian Exodus. From Tradition to Resettlement. Understanding Refugees from Laos, Kampuchea and Vietnam in Canada.* Ottawa: Canadian Asian Studies Association, 1980.

Mention should also be made at this point of the considerable amount of material, scholarly and/or for the general public, published as a result of the support of the Multiculturalism Directorate. A series of ethnic histories (entitled *Generations*) are being co-published with McClelland and Stewart; *The Canadian Family Tree,* a basic source of information about Canadian ethnic groups has just been republished and includes some 82 groups; many language textbooks and readers have been produced as well as two anthologies of short fiction in translation. A list entitled *Publication Supported by the Multiculturalism Directorate, Government of Canada,* 1981, is available from the Directorate and can be consulted for more information.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

A selected list of Canadian bibliographic items relating to ethnic studies.

GENERAL

ASSOCIATION OF CANADIAN COMMUNITY COLLEGES / ASSOCIATION DES COLLÈGES COMMUNAUTAIRES DU CANADA. *Communiqué: Canadian Studies* 3 (October 1976). [Special bibliographic issue on multiculturalism.]

BOGUSIS, RUTH. *Checklist of Canadian Ethnic Serials / Liste des publications en série ethniques du Canada.* Ottawa: Newspaper Division, National Library of Canada, 1981.

BRITISH COLUMBIA. Centennial Committee. *Ethnic Groups in British Columbia: A Selected Bibliography.* Victoria, B.C., 1957. 64p.

BUDUROWYCZ, BOHDAN. *Slavic and East European Resources in Canadian Academic and Research Libraries.* Research Collections in Canadian Libraries. Special Studies, 4. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1976. xv, 595p.

CANADA. Department of Citizenship and Immigration. *Canadian Immigration and Emigration, 1946-1957; a Bibliography.* Ottawa, 1958. 38p.

CANADA. Department of Citizenship and Immigration. Canadian Citizenship Branch. *Research on Immigrant Adjustment and Ethnic Groups; a Bibliography of Published Material, 1920-1953.* Ottawa, 1955. [3], ii, 131p.

CANADA. Department of Citizenship and Immigration. Canadian Citizenship Branch. *Research on Immigrant Adjustment and Ethnic Groups; a Bibliography of Unpublished Theses, 1920-1953.* Ottawa, 1956. [3], 31p.

CANADA. Department of Citizenship and Immigration. Canadian Citizenship Branch. *Research on Immigrant Adjustment and Ethnic Groups; an Annual Bibliography.* Ottawa, 1954- .

CANADA. Department of Citizenship and Immigration. Economic and Social Research Branch. *Citizenship, Immigration and Ethnic Groups in Canada. A Bibliography of Research, Published and Unpublished Sources 1920-1958.* Ottawa, 1960, 190p., xxix.

CANADA. Department of Citizenship and Immigration. Economic and Social Research Division. *Citizenship, Immigration and Ethnic Groups in Canada: A Bibliography of Research, Published and Unpublished Sources 1959-1961.* Ottawa: Queen's Printer, February 1962. iv, 55p.

CANADA. Department of Citizenship and Immigration. Economic and Social Research Division. *Citizenship, Immigration and Ethnic Groups in Canada: A Bibliography of Research, Published and Unpublished Sources 1962-1964.* Ottawa: Queen's Printer, July 1964. iii, 127p.

CANADA. Department of Manpower and Immigration. *Immigration, Migration and Ethnic Groups in Canada. A Bibliography of Research 1964-1968.* Ottawa, 1969. 56p.

Canadian Ethnic Groups Bibliography. An Analytical list based on holdings in the Secretary of State Library. Ottawa: Department of the Secretary of State, 1974. [Paginated in sections into which bibliography divided]

Canadiana. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1950- .

GREGOROVICH, ANDREW. *Canadian Ethnic Groups Bibliography.* Toronto: Department of the Provincial Secretary and Citizenship of Ontario, 1972. 208p.

Harvard Encyclopedia of American Ethnic Groups. Edited by Stephen Thernstrom, Ann Orlov, and Oscar Handlin. Cambridge, Mass. and London, England: The Bellknap Press of Harvard University Press, 1980. 1076p.

LOCHHEAD, DOUGLAS, comp. *Bibliography of Canadian Bibliographies. Bibliographie des bibliographies canadiennes*. 2nd ed. Toronto: published in association with the Bibliographical Society of Canada by the University of Toronto Press, 1972. xiv, 312p.

MC LAREN, DUNCAN, comp. *Ontario Ethno-Cultural Newspapers 1835-1972. An Annotated Checklist*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1973. 234p.

OTTAWA. National Library of Canada. *Union List of Canadian Newspapers Held by Canadian Libraries*. 1st. ed. Ottawa, 1977. 483p.

PEEL, BRUCE B. *A Bibliography of the Prairie Provinces to 1953 with Biographical Index*. 2nd ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1973, 780p.

Publications Supported by the Multiculturalism Directorate, Government of Canada/Publications Subventionnées par la direction du multiculturalisme, gouvernement du Canada. Ottawa, 1980. Revised version 1981.

Resource List for a Multicultural Society. Compiled by Janet Maxwell, Banuta Rubess, Indra Sabanskis, Dorothy-Jean Todd. Toronto: Ministry of Culture and Recreation, 1976. 627p.

BY DISCIPLINE

BAILEY, LEUBA, ed. *The Immigrant Experience. Themes in Canadian Literature*. Toronto: MacMillan, 1975.

THE CANADIAN WRITERS' UNION. *The Immigrant Experience: a Resource Guide for the Teaching of Canadian Literature*. Toronto: Coach House Press, 1976. 43p.

FOWKE, EDITH; and HENDERSON CARPENTER, CAROLE, comps. *A Bibliography of Canadian Folklore in English*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1981.

GRIFFIN, LOUISE, comp. *Multiethnic Books for Young Children. An Annotated Bibliography for Parents and Teachers*. An ERIC-NAEYC Publication in Early Childhood Education. Washington: National Association for the Education of Young Children, [1970?].

MALLEA, JOHN R.; and SHEA, EDWARD C., comps. *Multiculturalism and Education. A Select Bibliography*. Toronto: Ontario Institute for Studies in Education and the Ontario Ministry of Culture and Recreation, 1979.

MISKA, JOHN. *Ethnic and Native Canadian Literature 1850-1979: A Bibliography of Primary and Secondary Materials*. Lethbridge: Alberta, Microform Biblios. 1980. [Microfiche.]

ROME, DAVID. *Jews in Canadian Literature; a Bibliography*. Rev. ed. Montreal: Canadian Jewish Congress and Jewish Public Library, 1964, 2v.

WOOD, DEAN. *Multicultural Canada. A Teacher's Guide to Ethnic Studies*. Toronto: The Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1978. 138p. [Bibliography p.57-129.]

BY ETHNIC GROUP

BELL, DOROTHY and others, comps. *Canadian Black Studies Bibliography*. [Toronto: Cross Cultural Learners Workshops?] Summer 1971. [Misc. pagination]

DAVIES, RAYMOND ARTHUR. *Printed Jewish Canadiana, 1685-1900; Tentative Checklist of Books, Pamphlets, Pictures, Magazine and Newspaper Articles and Currency, Written by or Relating to the Jews of Canada*. Montreal, 1955. 56p.

DORE, GRAZIA. *Bibliografia per la storia dell' emigrazione italiana in America*. Roma: Tipografia de Ministero Degli Affari Esteri, 1956. 125p.

FEDYNSKYJ, ALEXANDER. *Bibliographical Index of the Ukrainian Press Outside Ukraine*. vols. 10-13 for 1975-1978. Cleveland, Ohio: Ukrainian Museum-Archives, 1979. 88p.

FISHER, MARY L., comp. *The Negro in America: A Bibliography*. 2nd ed. Originally compiled by Elizabeth W. Miller. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1971. [6,500 entries.]

FRIESEN, JOHN and LUSTY, TERRY. *The Metis of Canada: An Annotated Bibliography*. Toronto: The Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 1980.

GREGOROVICH, ANDREW. "Ukrainian Canadiana: A Selected Bibliography of Scholarly Works 1970-1980." *Canadian Ethnic Studies*. 12(1980): 102-124.

HALASZ DE BEKY, IVAN, comp. *The Hungarians in Canada. A Bibliography*. Toronto, 1977. [Unpaginated, contains 127 items.]

HORVATH, MARIA, comp. *A Doukhobor Bibliography, Based on Material Available in the University of British Columbia Library*. Vancouver: UBC Library reference publication, 1968-1970. [2 vols.]

ISAAK, DAVID. *The Mennonites in Manitoba: An Annotated Bibliography Based on Books and Periodicals Found in the University of Toronto Public Libraries*. Toronto, 1963 [ii], 8 1. [ms. Toronto Univ. Library School]

JERABEK, ESTHER. *Czechs and Slovaks in North America. A Bibliography*. New York: Czechoslovak Society of

Arts and Sciences in America Inc., 1976. 448p.

KANTAUTAS, ADAM and FILOMENA. *A Lithuanian Bibliography. A Check-list of Books and Articles Held by the Major Libraries of Canada and the United States.* Edmonton: The University of Alberta Press, 1975. 725p.

KANTAUTAS, ADAM and FILOMENA. *Supplement to a Lithuanian Bibliography. A Further Check-list of Books and Articles Held by the Major Libraries of Canada and the United States.* Edmonton: The University of Alberta Press. 1979. 316p.

KLYMASZ, ROBERT B. *A Bibliography of Ukrainian Folklore in Canada, 1902-64.* Anthropology Papers, National Museum of Canada, No. 21. Ottawa: Queen's Printer, 1968. vi, 53p.

KOLEHMAINEN, JON ILMARI. *The Finns in America: A Bibliographical Gude to Their History.* Hancock, Michigan: Finnish American Historical Library, Suomi College, 1947. 141p.

KOZLOWSKI, HENRYK PAWEL. *Union List of Polish Serials in Canadian Libraries. Inventaire des publications en série polonaises dans les bibliothèques canadiennes.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1977. 406p.

MYRONIUK, HALYNA; and WOROBEC, CHRISTINE, comps. *Ukrainians in North America. A Select Bibliography.* Toronto: The Multicultural History Society of Ontario and St. Paul, Minn.: the Immigration History Research Centre, 1981. 236p. and index.

ROME, DAVID. *A Selected Bibliography of Jewish Canadiana.* Montreal: Canadian Jewish Congress and the Jewish Public Library, 1959. iv. [Unpaginated.]

Slavica Canadiana. Winnipeg: Published for the Canadian Association of Slavists by the Ukrainian Free Academy of Sciences, 1952-1972. An annual bibliography compiled by J.B. Rudnyckyj and others.

SMUCKER, DONOVAN E. *The Sociology of Canadian Mennonites, Hutterites and Amish: A Bibliography with annotations.* Waterloo: Wilfrid Laurier University Press, 1977. xvi, 232p.

SWYRIPA, FRANCES. *Ukrainian Canadians: A Survey of their Portrayal in English-language Works.* Edmonton: Published for the Canadian Institute of Ukrainian Studies by the University of Alberta Press, 1978. xiii, 169p.

TAPPER, LAWRENCE F. *A Guide to Sources for the Study of Canadian Jewry. Guide des sources d'archives sur les juifs canadiens.* Ottawa: National Ethnic Archives, Public Archives of Canada, 1978. 51p.

TUNG, CHANG YIU. *A Selected Bibliography on Chinese in Canada.* 1964. vi. 6 1. [Ms. U of Ottawa Library School]

TUREK, VICTOR. *Polonica Canadiana: A Bibliographical List of the Canadian Polish Imprints, 1848-1957.* Foreword by Robert H. Blackburn. Toronto: Canadian Polish Congress, Polish Research Institute in Canada, 1958. 138p.

Ukrainica Canadiana 1953-1972. Ukrainian Free Academy of Sciences. Series Bibliography. Winnipeg: Ukrainian Canadian Committee, 1953-73. 20 vols.

WALKER, JAMES W. ST. G. *A History of Blacks in Canada. A Study Guide for Teachers and Students.* Hull: Canadian Government Publishing Centre, Supply and Services Canada, 1980. 181p. [Bibliographic sections throughout the book]

WERES, ROMAN. *Bibliography of the Ukrainica Diasporiana Published in the Years 1973, 1974, 1975.* Chicago: Ukrainian Bibliographical Reference Centre, 1977. iv, 63p.

ZIPLANS, EMILIJA and others, comps. *Baltic Material in the University of Toronto Library. A Bibliography.* 2nd. ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1978. 267p.

ZOLOBKA, VINCENT. *Polonica Canadiana: A Bibliographical List of the Canadian Polish Imprints, 1958-1970.* Canadian Polish Congress: Polish Research Institute: Studies: 13. Toronto: Polish Alliance Press, 1978. 414p.

A SELECTED LIST OF ASSOCIATIONS AND PERIODICALS WHICH PUBLISH BIBLIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION IN THE AREA OF ETHNIC STUDIES

Many of the Learned Societies publish newsletters for their memberships containing bibliographic items of interest. Only a few are singled out here.

Association of Canadian Publishers, 70 The Esplanade, 3rd. Floor, Toronto, Ontario, M5E 1R2. Publishes a catalogue, *Canadian Studies.*

Association for Canadian Studies. L'Association des études canadiennes. 1750 Finch Avenue East, Willowdale, Ontario, M2J 2X5. Publishes: *Newsletter/Bulletin* ISSN 0225-3054.

Canadian Studies Foundation. La fondation d'études du Canada. Suite S.716, 252 Bloor Street West, Toronto, Ontario, M5S 1V5.

Canadian Asian Studies Association, 3A, 61 Paterson Hall, Carleton University, Colonel By Drive, Ottawa, Ontario, K1S 5B6.

Canadian Book Publishers' Council, 45 Charles Street East, Suite 701, Toronto, Ontario, M4Y 1S2. Co-publishes the *Canadian Studies* catalogue.

Canadian Ethnic Studies Association. Société canadienne d'étûdes ethniques. Publishes: *Bulletin* ISSN 0315-8705; *Canadian Ethnic Studies. Etudes ethniques au Canada.*

Canadian Institute of Ukrainian Studies, 352 Athabasca Hall, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta, T6G 2E8.

Canadian Society for the Study of Education.

Conference of Mennonites in Canada, 600 Shaftesbury Boulevard, Winnipeg, Manitoba, R3P 0M4.

Cross-Cultural Communication Centre, 1991 Dufferin Street, Toronto, Ontario M6E 3P9.

Department of the Secretary of State, Multiculturalism Directorate, Ottawa, Ontario, K1A 0M5.

German-Canadian Historical Association, P.O. Box 406, Station K, Toronto, Ontario, M4P 2G5.

Institute for Behavioural Research, Ethnic Research Programme, York University.

Multicultural History Society of Ontario 43 Queen's Park Crescent East, Toronto, Ontario, M5S 2C3. Publishes: *Polyphony,* biannually.

Ministry of Culture and Recreation, Multicultural Development Branch, 77 Bloor Street West, Toronto, Ontario, M7A 2R9.

National Museum of Man, Canadian Centre for Folk Culture Studies, Ottawa, Ontario, K1A 0M8.

Ontario Institute for Studies in Education, 252 Bloor Street West, Toronto, Ontario, M5S 1V6.

Polish Canadian Research Institute, 288 Roncesvalles Avenue, Toronto, Ontario, M6R 2M4.

Ukrainian Free Academy of Sciences, Winnipeg, Manitoba.

University of Toronto Quarterly. "Letters in Canada" including "Publications in other Languages." Toronto, University of Toronto Press, annually 1938-1979. [Section of "Publications in other languages" not included in 1980]

Some other periodicals:

Canadian Historical Review. Publishes a quarterly bibliography.

Canadian Slavonic Papers. Publishes an annual bibliography since 1977, entitled "Canadian Publications on the Soviet Union and Eastern Europe."

Heritage. Alberta Culture. 11th Floor - CN Tower, Edmonton, Alberta, T5J 0K5.

Journal of Ukrainian Graduate Studies.

Kaleidoscope Canada. Employment and Immigration, Ottawa, Ontario, K1A 0J9. Edited by George Bonavia.

Mosaic. University of Manitoba.

Multiculturalism. The Guidance Centre. Faculty of Education, University of Toronto.

THE FUGITIVE FEMALE: AN INTRODUCTION TO THE BIBLIOGRAPHY OF CANADIAN WOMEN'S STUDIES

VERONICA STRONG-BOAG
Associate Professor
Department of History and Women's Studies
Simon Fraser University
Burnaby, B.C. V5A 1S6

THE SERIOUS STUDY of Canada's women has progressed extremely rapidly. At the time of the last National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography in 1974 only two papers, those on Anthropology and Sociology, and History, referred even briefly to women as a subject area requiring attention. Since that date teaching, research and scholarship related to women has become highly visible with new courses, programmes, areas of investigation and publications. Few disciplines remain untouched. It must also be said that equally few give an unrestrained welcome to female subject matter. This mixed reception, together with the limitations and often inappropriateness of traditional methodologies and analyses which have long ignored women, make interdisciplinary contacts and endeavours especially congenial to scholars and students in Canada, like those elsewhere, interested in recovering and understanding female experience. The emergence of a host of interdisciplinary programmes at much the same time, including Latin American Studies, Asian Studies, Native Studies and Canadian Studies also provided models for interdisciplinary cooperation.

The result of interdisciplinarity has been a rich and provocative association of traditions in history, sociology, education, literature, psychology, philosophy, political science and economics. Not all disciplinary contributions have been equally strong. The latter three fields have often influenced work in history, for example, but have otherwise devoted relatively little time to the study of Canadian women as such. Any bibliographic survey reflects this imbalance. There is, in addition, regular cross-fertilization with newer programmes such as criminology, kinesiology and performing arts. The result is often impressive as with Lorenne Clark and Debra J. Lewis, *Rape: The Price of Coercive Sexuality* (Toronto: Women's Press, 1977). These contributions are increasing daily as interdisciplinary bibliographies make evident. In order, however, to keep this paper within manageable size the decision has been made to concentrate on interdisciplinary bibliographic materials in the first instance and then to focus on guides to traditional disciplines which as such have made significant contributions to the study of Canadian women.

Initiatives in Women's Studies are above all sympathetic to techniques, approaches and interpretations found in a wide variety of disciplines. Footnotes drawing upon the social sciences, humanities, and sciences are characteristic of much work in the field. It must also be said that this community of interest and blurring of conventional academic boundaries have also created a certain confusion as to just what is Women's Studies. It is broadly defined as the study of women and the context of their lives from a perspective which sees female human beings as central to the account and which is sympathetic to a feminist and interdisciplinary interpretation of the nature of female experience.[1]

The innovative character of Women's Studies also means that it is still in the process of formulating appropriate standards of judgement. Not only the choice of women as a legitimate area of interest but the accompanying need for new methodologies and interpretations challenge many of the accepted standards by which new entries are to be judged. The result can be both the potential omission of valuable but unorthodox studies from consideration and equally unwarranted attention to other works whose only real merit is their topicality. Despite such perils interdisciplinarity with its promise for re-evaluating conventional conceptualization, methodology and sources is integral to the full recovery of female experience.[2]

Related to the fact of interdisciplinarity is the role of a variety of media beside print. Slides, films, records and other audio-visual materials are especially valuable when conventional sources are frequently absent or inadequate. The re-examination of traditional disciplinary assumptions and the discovery of new knowledge often depends to a very large degree on the library's willingness to interpret its mandate broadly. That commitment needs to go beyond seeing non-print materials as frills or luxuries. To some extent this need has been recognized by the creation, for example, of separate audio-visual departments, but too often it seems they remain effectively on the periphery of storage and retrieval systems. There should be concerted effort to integrate these fully into library services.[3]

Women's Studies courses and programmes now exist in a great number of universities, colleges and high schools in this country. Not all, indeed perhaps not the majority, devote themselves solely to Canadian subjects. Many are consciously comparative, drawing on materials from Canada, the U.S., Europe, Great Britain and elsewhere. Others focus entirely on non-Canadian materials and still others, especially those in theory, call no nation or nations home. The temptation for investigators of the Canadian experience is to draw heavily on foreign, especially American and British, materials for inspiration and guidance. This influence is not of course peculiar to Women's Studies. Labour studies, criminology, literary theory and urban studies among others all refer frequently to work done elsewhere. The result for the librarian is also the same: a heavier than 'normal' demand for related titles in non-Canadian fields. This non-Canadian inspiration combines with the interdisciplinarity of Women's Studies to create a demanding task for those seeking to keep up to date in the field. The fact that rapid growth in Canada has been matched, sometimes surpassed, by an expanded interest in women elsewhere as well has produced a massive pool of new information to which Women's Studies students and scholars would like access. This conference, however, has as its special concern bibliography on Canadian subjects. Even this reduced task is a large one. It is complicated by two factors in particular. First, separate bibliographies on Canadian subjects are not always or even often in some fields readily available. Subdisciplinary frameworks, as in labour force economics, are frequently international in scope. Second, sources relevant to the study of women appear in a vast array of guises. Their relevance is not always, or even one suspects in the majority of cases, identified by existing classification systems. As we shall see, these conditions plague the bibliography of Canadian Women's Studies.

INTERDISCIPLINARY BIBLIOGRAPHIC SOURCES

The outstanding source of information about writing on Canadian women is *Resources for Feminist Research/Documentation sur la Recherche féministe (formerly the Canadian Newsletter of Research on Women, CNRW)*. It began in 1972 at the University of Waterloo as a modest attempt by sociologists, Margrit Eichler and Marylee Stephenson, to end the isolation of Canadian scholars interested in women. It has developed into a substantial publication winning a wide audience among both academics and the laity across Canada and abroad. Now published four times a year, with additional supplements, through the Department of Sociology at the Ontario Institute for Studies in Education it offers a broad range of review essays, abstracts of current publications and theses and work in progress in Women's Studies in Canada and elsewhere. More than any other publication *RFR/DRF* testifies to the strong interdisciplinary and cross-national associations which infuse Women's Studies. Here in a concise and readable form are presented the controversies and discoveries which are enlivening debate about the study of women the world over. Serious attention given to literature in languages other than English also provides a valuable update to pieces which may otherwise be missed. In this regard the inclusion of substantial input from French-speaking Quebec makes this an exception to the majority of so-called national periodicals whose coverage is generally irregular and superficial.

Resources is more than a mere annotated listing of relevant materials. It also supplies through substantial editorials, guest editors and letters to the editors the cutting edge of new thinking in the field. Here we often learn first what Women's Studies is and can be. The introduction of special issues focusing on history (VIII, no. 2, July 1979), political theory (VII, no. 1, March 1979), the politics of culture, (VIII, no. 3, pt. 2, Nov. 1979), anthropology (VII, no. 3, Nov. 1978), psychology (IX, no. 2, July 1980) together with particular attention to concerns such as unemployment (II, no. 2, July 1978), feminist criticism (VI, no. 2, May 1977), women filmmakers (VIII, no. 4, 1979) and women in political science (VII, no. 3, part 1, Nov. 1979) establish the parameters of contemporary debate and identify the critical reading. Also noteworthy for libraries is the addition in August 1976 and January 1978 of *Women. A Bibliography of Special Periodical Issues* which surveys Canadian and international contributions from 1960 to 1977. Similarly substantial was a supplement entitled *Archival Materials on Canadian Women* (February 1977) which inventoried sources in the personal and family papers and manuscripts in the Archives of Ontario and manuscript holdings in the Baldwin Room of the Metropolitan Toronto Public Library. The inventories of articles relating to women in *The Journal of Education* (for upper Canada and Ontario) 1848-1877 and *The Week* (Toronto 1883-1896) are just the kind of time-saving initiatives which libraries ought to point out to their users.

If RFR/DRF is essential reading for any who hope to keep up with new work, *Atlantis: A Women's Studies Journal* published out of Acadia University in Wolfville, Nova Scotia since 1975, is a similarly vital component of the new field. A referenced interdisciplinary journal devoted to critical and creative writing in English or French, it introduces readers to monographic studies in areas such as the Canadian novel and poetry, the double standard, women in the U.S.S.R., female reformers, family law, female imperialists, religion, marxism and unemployment insurance. Regular reviews of recent literature also offer useful guides to a field where additions often come hard and fast. The result, regularly of high quality, provides an essential second stage introduction to the questions and methodologies of Women's Studies as practised in this country. Given the well-known reluctance of established disciplinary journals until very recently at least to accept so-called women's topics and the eagerness of Women's Studies scholars to inaugurate a dialogue right from the onset of new investigations, this journal is irreplaceable. *Atlantis* also publishes the proceedings of the Annual General Meeting of the Canadian Research Institute for the Study of Women, a further reflection of the close ties which bind together investigators from all disciplines.

The third critical resource is *Canadian Women's Studies/les Cahiers de la femme* which has been published at Centennial College, Scarborough, Ontario since 1978.* Devoted to meeting the needs of Women's Studies programmes in Canadian high schools, colleges and universities it stresses the practical implications for daily life of feminist interpretations and discoveries. To this end the great majority of its articles, poetry and fiction concentrate on Canadian women. As such it is an essential primary source for studying women in the 1970s and the 1980s. It also treats readers to an introductory consideration of complex issues in politics, sexuality, work and power which the RFR and *Atlantis* examine at a more sophisticated level. The anger at women's second class status is more vividly expressed here as well but all three journals are explicitly feminist in orientation.

The standard guide to Canadian periodicals, the *Canadian Periodical Index* lacks this political orientation and also fails to index RFR/DRF, *Atlantis* or *Canadian Women's Studies*. These curious omissions mean that CPI largely fails to offer the casual reader any real insight into writing on women in this country. The inclusion of *Branching Out* (now deceased), *Chatelaine, Canadian Home Economics Journal, Homemakers' Magazine* and *Canadian Nurse* as the only journals focusing explicitly on women means inevitable disappointment for those seeking information on the state of Women's Studies in this country. The claim of this vehicle of the Canadian Library Association to be "a modern, scientific exponent of a very ancient craft"[4] seems to include a retention of long familiar assumptions about the relative importance of women's concerns. The CPI should remedy this situation if it does indeed hope to be an up-to-date reflection of the needs of Canadians.

---

*Now published at York University.

DISCIPLINARY BIBLIOGRAPHY

Much of the bibliographical material on Women's Studies is naturally enough interdisciplinary in focus. There do, however, exist a number of bibliographic sources rooted in individual disciplines. Their distribution and availability serve as a useful reflection of the relative strength of women as a subject matter of serious concern. Some disciplines such as geography and economics are absent because so little of obvious bibliographic value for Women's Studies could be identified by this author. This is not to suggest that relevant material in omitted fields is not being produced but that treatment of women is not evidently a priority of any kind that can be readily recognized. The relevant publications in such disciplines usually appear in the interdisciplinary sources already mentioned.

History

Women's Studies developed just about the same time as the study of Canada's past was receiving new scrutiny by those identified with the 'New Social History'. Historians interested in the recovery of the anonymous and private individual and event and the identification of popular and domestic culture were similarly sympathetic to the addition of women to the historical account.[5] Their attention to the possibilities of new methodologies and interpretations also gave many a natural affinity with interdisciplinary efforts by Women's Studies. The especially close contact between historians of education, labour and women reflects common concerns to reshape an historical record which traditionally has ignored the issues of race, class and sex which scholars now recognize as critical. The Canadian Committee on Women's History/Le Comité canadien d'histoire des femmes, in existence since 1975, and now an affiliated committee of the Canadian Historical Association, is typical of the disciplinary initiatives which promote scholarship in individual areas. Its regular newsletter, published twice yearly, and serving over one hundred members provides vital information about new initiatives and investigators. The Committee has also been responsible for surveys of provincial archives now published in the *RFR/DRF* This is not the only sign of progress. There now exist a number of major bibliographic contributions to the field. The first to include history was Sandra Gwyn's contribution "Women" in R. Fulford *et al*, eds. *Read Canada. A Book about Canadian Books* (Toronto: James, Lewis and Samuel, 1979) but the first to devote itself particularly to Canadian history was V. Strong-Boag's "Cousin Cindrella. A Guide to the Historical Literature Pertaining to Canadian Women" in Marylee Stephenson, ed., *Women in Canada* (Toronto: New Press, 1973; revised ed., Don Mills, Ontario: General Publishing, 1977). That bibliography, combining as it did primary and secondary sources, reflected the infancy of the field. The publication seven years later of a full volume, *True Daughters of the North. Canadian Women's History: An Annotated Bibliography* by Beth Light and Veronica Strong-Boag documented the massive increase in titles, many of real substance. This volume ought to be in the reference collection of all libraries in the country as its annotations, arrangement and introduction provide *the* critical point of departure for historical scholarship on women at this time. In addition new work, especially that focusing on individual provinces, is appearing almost daily. A second edition of *True Daughters* is planned. Until that time RFR/DRF or the newsletter of the CCWH identifies the essential newcomers. The major professional journals – in particular the *Revue d'histoire de l'amérique français, Canadian Historical Review, Journal of Canadian Studies* and *Histoire sociale/Social History,* and especially the first two – merit attention for their regular bibliographic sections, although their categorization is not especially useful nor interest in women particularly evident.

Anthropology and Sociology

The conventional classification of the discipline of history by nations allows relatively easy identification of material on Canadian women or publications where it is likely to appear. Sociology and anthropology on the other hand are divided according to a variety of criteria, including at times the nation. Their treatment of women, when it appears, has often neglected the significance of nationality. The tendency, for example, not to differentiate markedly between Canadian and American materials is common. Few anthropology or sociology courses focus solely on Canadian women. The research and publications of Women's Studies scholars in this area are similarly often not limited to Canada. There is, however, a great deal of work being done.

The state of matters in sociology is usefully summed up in M. Eichler, "Sociological Research on Women in Canada," *Canadian Review of Sociology and Anthropology* 12, Pt. 1, (Nov. 1975), pp. 474-8. "A Bibliography of Social Science materials on Canadian Women, published between 1950-1975" by Margrit Eichler, Jennifer Newton and Lynne Primrose in M. Stephenson, *Women in Canada* (Don Mills: General Publishing Co. Ltd., 1977) supplies the first guide to this literature. Since that date the best bibliographic source is RFR/DRF which has especially strong input from sociologists. Of particular use is Natalie J. Sokoloff's "Bibliography on the Sociology of Women and Work: 1970's" RFR/DRF, VII, no. 4, 1979, 48-74, which includes Canadian materials. The *Women in Canadian Sociology/Femme et Sociologie Bulletin* is also of benefit in identifying some of the major debates characterizing the field.

Anthropology is also making a distinct contribution, although sometimes – as with the special issue of RFR/DRF on "Women and the Politics of Culture" – not clearly differentiated from sociology. *The Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology* in particular has published some useful work. The recent appearance of Sylvia Van Kirk's *Many Tender Ties* (Winnipeg: Watson and Dwyer, 1980) and Jennifer Brown's *Strangers in Blood* (Vancouver: UBC Press, 1980), both pioneering investigations of Indian-white contact and the fur trade's impact on women and children, also provide useful bibliographic guides to anthropological literature. *Canadian Ethnic Studies* should also be reviewed regularly for its reviews as indeed should the major periodicals in sociology and anthropology generally. *The Canadian Periodical Index* is an uncertain indicator of the appearance of new material.

Psychology

Much as with other fields psychology has not always welcomed consideration of women. One recent survey notes:

> Psychology has been primarily a masculine discipline . . . When women's studies courses are offered, either they are viewed with suspicion, contempt and ridicule . . ., or exaggerated concern is expressed about the academic value of such courses.[6]

The Coordinating Committee on the Status of Women in Psychology of the Canadian Psychological Association and the Interest Group on Women and Psychology, the latter with a membership of over 220, reflect, however, the forces for change. The newsletter of the IGWP is a useful critical guide to the specific concerns of the discipline but as is commonly the case *RFR/DRF* remains the outstanding bibliographic guide. One special issue of "Research on the Psychology of Women," (IX, no. 2, July 1980) summarizes prevailing interests. Professional journals such as the *Canadian Journal of Behavioural Science*, the *Canadian Journal of Psychology, Canadian Psychology/Psychologie canadien* ought also to be reviewed from time to time although attention to women in these seems minimal at the moment.

Philosophy

Generally speaking this discipline contributes relatively little to Canadian women as such. Philosophy often seeks to deal with universal problems so that much work does not claim to be particularly rooted in any one locale. Several subdisciplines (for example, ethics) do, however, direct themselves to the Canadian scene.[7] The relevance of philosophy to Women's Studies is not dictated so much by the use of Canadian material as by its articulation of the nature of the general human condition. The recent publication of *The Sexism of Social and Politial Theory: Essays on Plato, Locke, Rousseau, Hume, Hegel, Marx and Nietzche* edited by Lorenne M.G. Clark and Linda Lang (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1979) reflects this interest. Canadian work on women is encouraged by the Society of Women in Philosophy, an affiliated committee of the Canadian Philosophical Association. Its newsletter, published irrgularly since 1975, reports work in progress and publication. It would be a useful addition to reference holdings.

Political Science

Political theory is in much the same situation as Philosophy as is evident in the issue on "Political Theory: A Feminist Perspective", *RFR/DRF, VII*, no. 1, March 1979. Beyond theory the other subdisciplines of Political Science generally seem to concern themselves surprisingly little with Canadian women.[8]

Wendy A. Felman's "Women in Canadian Politics since 1945: A Bibliography" and Naomi Black's "Women in Canadian Political Science" in the same issue, document a rather dismal situation. *Atlantis* and *RFR/DRF* ought to be consulted first as guides to both disciplines. To this date the professional journals have yielded little, either bibliographically or otherwise.

Literature

Women have always been highly visible in Canadian literature as writers and subjects. The strength of this tradition has meant their regular inclusion in courses in French- and English-Canadian literature. Only recently, however, has this material been viewed from a Women's Studies perspective. Some of these new insights are evident in *Canadian Literature/Littérature canadienne,* the *Journal of Canadian Fiction* and *Essays in Canadian Writing,* which together with *Atlantis* publish many of the critical readings in the field. Also of value is the explicitly feminist journal, *Room of One's Own.* The special issue of *RFR/DRF* VII, no. 2 (July 1978), "Humanities: Research and Creativity/humanités: recherches et creativité" supplies the essential contribution by Lois C. Gottleib and Wendy Keitner, "Reflections on Canadian Women's Writing of the 1970's: Preliminary Results of 'An Annotated Bibliography of Canadian Women Writers (in English): A Feasibility Study, 1970-1975' ". Also of particular interest for French-Canadian authors are Patricia Smart's "Women Writers in Quebec", *Room of One's Own,* IV, nos. 1 and 2, pp. 7-19 and Suzanne Paradis, *Femme fictive: Femme réelle: le personnage féminin dans le roman féminin canadien-français, 1884-1966* (Ottawa, 1976). A newcomer of promise is *ABCMA. The Annotated Bibliography of Canada's Major Authors* (Toronto: ECW Press, 1980), the first in an anticipated series on Canadian writers in French and English of the 19th and 20th centuries. The first volume includes three women – Margaret Atwood, Margaret Laurence and Gabrielle Roy. Each bibliography contains a critical introduction to the author's work and a full list of primary and secondary sources and materials, including audio-visual items. This should be used in conjunction with the older guides by Margaret Atwood, *Survival. A Thematic Guide to Canadian Literature* (Toronto: Anansi, 1971), C. Klinck, ed., *Literary History of Canada* (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1976, v.1-3) and Desmond Pacey, *Creative Writing in Canada* (Toronto: Ryerson, 1967).

Education

Since the mid-19th century women have made up a significant proportion – sometimes the majority – of teachers in this country. Despite such high visibility, only recently has the fact of sex, or for that matter race or class, been acknowledged as a significant influence on education at all levels.[9] Bibliographic guides are beginning to reflect this new interest. In particular, the *Canadian Education Index/Répertoire canadien sur l'éducation, A Bibliography of Higher Education in Canada,* and the regular supplements in the *Canadian Journal of Education* are the preliminary guides to women's subjects. The failure of the *Index* to cite materials in the RFR/DRF, *Atlantis* or *Canadian Women's Studies* reduces its usefulness in this area and should be remedied.

Non-Print Sources

This area, a relatively new area of substantial library interest, serves women's studies like many others with mixed results. Most obviously and familiarly, classification systems, which appear to differ widely across the country and derive often from conventional indexing procedures, are not especially useful. The worst served appear to be aural and slide materials: there seems to be no comprehensive guide to Canadian items, let alone those especially on women. Bibliographic introductions to particular collections exist in various libraries but few are coordinated to simplify the researcher's task. Catherine Moore's "A Checklist of some Audio Visual Materials in Canadian Women's History", RFR/DRF, VIII, no.2 (July 1979) is a step in the right direction but slides and tapes come off second best. The state of Canadian filmography and film bibliography is rather better. Particularly to be recommended is Eleanor Beattie, *The Handbook of Canadian Film* (Toronto: Peter Martin Associates, 1977). This volume includes a review of Canadian filmmakers with brief biographies, filmographies and bibliographies. It also has a section, "Women in Films" which lists Canadian production and distribution groups interested in women and catalogues to films by and about women. *Film Canadiana. The Canadian Film Institute Yearbook of Canadian Films* has a subject classification for women and some attempt at cross-indexing as do various CFB catalogues. Beattie also cites other general catalogues which incidentally include materials related to Women's Studies, although this is not always identified precisely. What is needed is a substantial treatment of Canadian films and women. Colin Browne's valuable *Motion Picture Production in British Columbia: 1898-1940,* Heritage Record No. 6 (Victoria: B.C. Provincial Museum, 1979) with its enumeration and description of over 1000 films made in or about B.C. provides one example of how this might be done. One international assessment is also instructive. Rosemary Ribich Kowalski, *Women and Films. A Bibliography* (Metuchen: Scarecrow Press, 1976) divides its treatment into categories - 1. Women as Performers, 2. Women as Filmmakers, 3. Images of Women and 4. Women Columnists and Critics - which might be used in classifying Canadian material. Browne and Kowalski demonstrate that the difficult task of classifying and identifying non-print materials can be handled now. It is time for Canadian Women's Studies, among others, to benefit from just these kind of initiatives.

CONCLUSION

At this review indicates much remains to be done on the bibliography of Canadian Women's Studies. Problems of identification and classification are serious impediments to a comprehensive understanding of this new field. Matters have, however, changed a good deal in the last ten years. *Resources for Feminist Research/Documentation sur la recherche féministe* deserves special mention. Its efforts have been fundamental to the creation of Women's Studies Bibliography in this country. The frequently spontaneous and voluntary bibliographic initiatives by the *RFR/DRF* and other investigators in a host of fields, including library science, are noteworthy, indeed one suspects unprecedented in the history of Canadian bibliography.[10] All their work, however, is finally unequal to the task. Canadian Women's Studies is a quickly developing area. It requires, and urgently, concerted sympathetic attention from bibliographic professionals. The creation of more sophisticated identification and classification procedures for Women's Studies should be a priority in the improvement of Canadian bibliographic services.

REFERENCES

1 For a detailed discussion of the nature of Women's Studies see Sheila Ruth. "An Introduction to Women's Studies." In *Issues in Feminism*, pp. 2-18 Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1980; and Sheila Tobias. "Women's Studies: Its Origins, its Organization and its Prospects" *Women's Studies International Quarterly* 1 (1978): 85-97.

2 See Greta Nemeroff. "Rationale for an Interdisciplinary Approach to Women's Studies." *Canadian Women's Studies* 1 (Fall 1978): 60-68.

3 For a valuable discussion of the uses of such materials see Karen F.A. Fox. "Audiovisual Teaching Materials." *Signs* 1 (1975): 185-192.

4 Gordon Adshead, "Editorial." *Canadian Periodical Index* 34 (January 1981): 1.

5 For an appraisal of the relationship between the New Social History and Women's history see Beth Light and Veronica Strong-Boag. "Introduction." *True Daughters of the North*. Toronto: OISE Press, 1980.

6 Williams, Tannis MacBeth; Zabrack, Merle L.; and Harrison, Linda F. "Some Factors Affecting Women's Participation in Psychology in Canada." *Canadian Psychology/Psychologie Canadien* 21 (July 1980): 98.

7 See, for instance, Susan Wendell, "Discrimination, Sex Prejudice and Affirmative Action." *Atlantis* 6 (Fall 1980): 39-50.

8 This omission is not unique to Canada. See, for instance, the situation described by Kay Boals. "Political Science." *Signs* 1 (1975): 161-174.

9 See, for instance, Donald Wilson. "The Historiography of British Columbia Educational History." In *Schooling and Society in 20th Century British Columbia*. Edited by J. Donald Wilson and David C. Jones. Calgary: Detselig Enterprises Ltd., 1980.

10 Much the same situation exists regarding Canadian archival material. See Veronica Strong-Boag. "Raising Clio's Consciousness: Women's History and Archives in Canada." *Archivaria* 6 (Summer 1978): 70-82.

NOTES

Participants at this session of the Conference would like to urge all those engaged in bibliographic projects, especially those supported by public funds, to recognize the need to include Women and Women's Studies in many compilations relating to Canada and Canadian Studies.

LA DIFFUSION PAR LA PUBLICATION DES INSTRUMENTS DE RECHERCHE EN ARCHIVISTIQUE

MARCEL CAYA
Université McGill

Bien qu'il existe un certain nombre de bibliographies portant sur les archives au Canada[1], aucune n'a encore été compilée pour englober l'ensemble des instruments de recherche publiés dans le but de faciliter l'utilisation des documents d'archives. Cet état de fait n'est pas imputable à la pénurie de matériel. Bien au contraire. Malgré son jeune âge et ses dimensions restreintes, le monde de l'archivistique canadien a déjà produit un nombre impressionnant de publications destinées à aider le chercheur à se servir des documents conservés dans divers dépôts d'archives. Mais, comme il se doit, la description bibliographique des instruments de recherche publiés se retrouve surtout dans les bibliographies spécialisées qui sont le plus susceptibles d'atteindre la clientèle visée par ce type de diffusion. C'est un peu ce qui explique le peu d'attention consacré jusqu'à maintenant à la définition et à la description des divers instruments de recherche publiés par différents dépôts d'archives.

C'est pourquoi cette présentation tentera de décrire les divers types d'instruments de recherche publiés jusqu'à maintenant afin d'en mieux définir les objectifs et l'utilité dans la planification de toute recherche, et également d'aider le bibliographe à en reconnaître les caractéristiques distinctives. Parce que divers guides, inventaires, répertoires, listes et index sont régulièrement publiés sans qu'aucun cadre théorique et définisseur n'ait été jusqu'ici standardisé, cet exercice utile devient capital dans le contexte de cette conférence qui vise à éclairer le monde de la bibliographie canadienne. En conclusion, certaines remarques de nature générale sur le caractère de ces publications offriront quelques suggestions pratiques sur le traitement de ce type de matériel.

DÉFINITION DE LA DESCRIPTION ARCHIVISTIQUE

Tout en constituant des *outils* descriptifs, les instruments de recherche ne sont pas des véritables bibliographies. Leur utilisation demeure indispensable à l'amorce de tout projet de recherche originale nécessitant des données d'archives; mais cette consultation est toujours dépendante de l'utilisation et de la connaissance des sources secondaires pertinentes. L'instrument de recherche ne porte pas sur la description des sources documentaires disponibles sur un sujet ou un ensemble de sujets donnés; il vise plutôt à fournir objectivement les renseignements essentiels à l'identification et au repérage des documents d'un ensemble donné.

Sans entrer dans des explications détaillées de la complexité et des difficultés de décrire adéquatement le matériel d'archives, il convient de mentionner aussi quelques caractéristiques qui font des publications d'instruments de recherche archivistiques des produits différents des bibliographies ordinaires. Contrairement à la plupart des unités documentaires visées par les bibliographies conventionnelles, le document d'archives n'a pas d'abord été créé pour être utilisé comme outil de documentation; il acquiert plutôt cette qualité en raison de l'importance intrinsèque de l'information qu'il contient ou de sa valeur externe comme preuve d'une transaction, comme témoignage d'un processus ou comme document légal démontrant la propriété d'un droit. C'est pourquoi contrairement au livre, le sujet d'un document d'archives n'est pas habituellement définissable à partir de certaines caractéristiques externes qui pourraient en faciliter le catalogage. Alors que le titre d'un livre constitue la plupart du temps un indicateur fiable de son contenu, la majorité des documents d'archives n'ont pas de titre et, lorsqu'ils en ont, ils ne sont pas toujours un reflet précis de leur contenu. Dans les archives du gouvernement canadien, par exemple, il existe au moins une cinquantaine de dossiers intitulés "politiques et directives ministérielles" qui ne portent, de fait, que sur la préparation de politiques et de directives de divers ministères et ne contiennent souvent aucune donnée sur le résultat final de cette préparation. Le produit final de ce travail de préparation se retrouve plutôt dans les dossiers ou procès-verbaux officiels des organes décisionnels du gouvernement comme ceux du Cabinet ou du Conseil du Trésor.

Parce que tout document d'archives fait partie d'un ensemble défini par le contexte dans lequel il a été créé, le sujet n'en constitue même pas toujours l'élément descriptif le plus important: la description de ce contexte et de la transaction qui a produit le document sont beaucoup plus importantes parce que le document d'archives n'a aucune signification en dehors de la réalité qu'il est supposé réfléter. L'éventail d'objets ou de sujets qu'il peut documenter est trop varié et imprévisible pour être décrit à ce niveau. Une telle définition du sujet équivaudrait à en limiter indûment le potentiel d'utilisation. Prenons l'exemple d'un événement précis comme celui de l'engagement du directeur d'une bibliothèque dans une université. Parce qu'il implique plusieurs acteurs différents, un tel événement sera susceptible de générer un grand nombre de transactions qui seront documentées dans divers dossiers de l'institution. Même s'ils portent le même titre, des dossiers intitulés "Engagement d'un directeur" portant sur l'engagement d'un directeur/trice de bibliothèque dans une université seront les produits d'un certain nombre de contextes différents desquels dépendra leur contenu: le dossier provenant du Service de la comptabilité est susceptible de contenir des renseignements comptables routiniers; le dossier du Bureau du Recteur ne contiendra probablement que des renseignements usuels sans beaucoup de détails sur l'engagement du ou de la bibliothécaire en question; par contre le dossier du supérieur immédiat, qui aurait participé directement à la recherche de candidats et à la sélection du gagnant, est susceptible de contenir beaucoup plus de renseignements relatifs à tout le processus d'engagement du ou de la bibliothécaire en chef. Pourtant dans les trois cas, trois dossiers ont été constitués dans la même institution, les trois dossiers portaient tous le même titre et ne différaient, en fin de compte, que par le contexte d'accumulation des pièces pertinentes qui est défini par les fonctions de chaque créateur de documents.

Le processus de description se complique encore plus dans une perspective historique si l'institution a procédé à l'engagement d'un certain nombre de bibliothécaires-en-chef durant une période prolongée. Dans ce cas, non seulement l'identification du créateur du dossier est importante; la date devient aussi un élément descriptif indispensable. Plus qu'une simple date de publication, elle définira de manière essentielle des contextes événementiels distincts et servira à différencier des ensembles de documents sans relation les uns avec les autres malgré une similitude de titres.

DESCRIPTION DU CONTEXTE DE CRÉATION

A la limite, la description du matériel archivistique dépend beaucoup plus de la structure d'un ensemble de documents donnés que des sujets abordés par ses divers éléments. C'est pourquoi le processus de description d'archives paraît parfois aussi désordonné et qu'il défie toujours le genre de standardisation réalisé par les règles de catalogage anglo-américaines, pour ne citer que cet exemple. Ainsi, parce que l'unité documentaire visée par les descriptions d'archives n'est pas définie *a priori*, une importante facette du travail d'archiviste consiste à reconnaître les différents regroupements de matériel et à les décrire en tenant compte du contexte et de l'objectif de leur création. De façon générale, les deux grands principes de classement archivistique – le principe de provenance et le principe du respect des fonds – visent précisément à assurer qu'outre le document, l'archiviste préservera aussi les relations établies entre les documents au cours de leur période active; ils visent aussi à les préserver dans le même ordre que celui qui a servi à leur création et/ou à leur utilisation.

Nécessité de hiérarchiser les descriptions

Dans un contexte où le processus de classification des documents est indépendant de leur description, l'impossibilité de définir l'unité de description archivistique de façon uniforme force les archivistes à recourir à une hiérarchie de descriptions rédigées de manière à préciser la spécificité de chacune des pièces individuelles et à produire des descriptions générales susceptibles de préciser la nature des ensembles visés. Ainsi le dossier d'engagement d'une bibliothécaire-en-chef sera d'abord identifié par rapport à l'ensemble des dossiers de son créateur et des dates extrêmes de son utilisation. (Tableau A).

Tableau A

Ensemble	Archives de l'Université ABC, 1871-1980
Groupe	Archives du Bureau du Recteur, 1891-1980
Série	Archives du Recteur Lavoie, 1935-1980
Sous-séries	dossiers administratifs, 1935-1950
	dossiers administratifs, 1947-1967
	dossiers administratifs, 1965-1980
Dossier	Engagement d'une bibliothécaire-en-chef, 1971-1973.

A son tour, l'ensemble des dossiers de cet utilisateur devra être caractérisé par rapport à l'ensemble des dossiers de l'institution visée. Dans un mode hiérarchique, la description devra indiquer que le dossier d'engagement d'une bibliothécaire-en-chef de 1971 à 1973 fait partie des dossiers administratifs de 1965-1980 du Recteur Lavoie de l'Université ABC et fait partie de cet ensemble spécifique. Dans une perspective hiérarchique encore plus générale, les dossiers de valeur permanente de l'institution devront être distingués des autres dossiers conservés par un dépôt d'archives donné afin de permettre au chercheur intéressé de le retracer. Les chercheurs habitués à travailler avec les documents gouvernementaux reconnaîtront ce cheminement hiérarchique qui est similaire à celui retrouvé dans la plupart des collections de documents gouvernementaux. La seule différence reste qu'au lieu de se retrouver dans un certain nombre de dépôts de documents gouvernementaux, les documents d'archives sont uniques; ils ne peuvent se retrouver sous leur forme originale que dans un seul dépôt.

Le processus de consultation des instruments de recherche

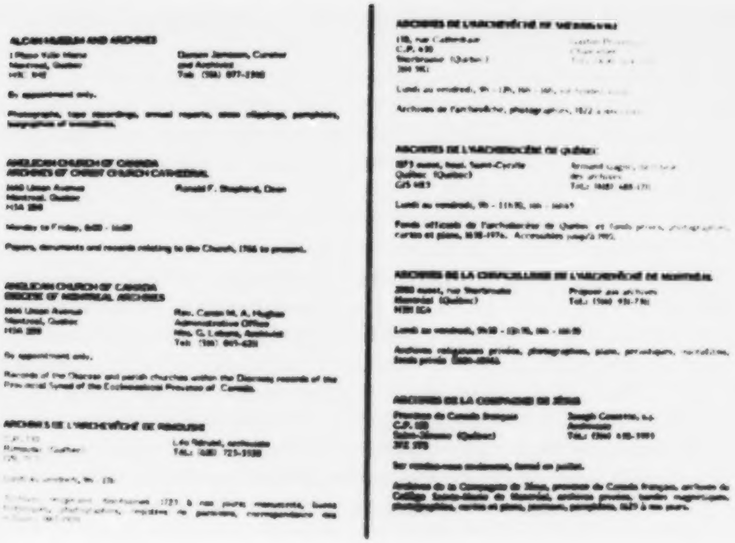
A travers ce processus de généralisation des descriptions, on en arrive finalement à décrire des ensembles complexes qui serviront à aiguillonner le travail du chercheur et à lui faire partager le contexte de l'accumulation des documents individuels qu'il désire utiliser. Du point de vue de l'utilisateur du matériel, les instruments de recherche les plus généraux serviront d'abord à éliminer les ensembles de documents jugés non pertinents de sorte qu'en s'orientant toujours vers la consultation de guides plus spécifiques pour le matériel qui semble prometteur, le chercheur pourra éventuellement en arriver à la description du type de document désiré. Avant d'en arriver au dossier d'engagement d'une bibliothécaire, le chercheur devra savoir sur quelle université il veut se documenter, quelle période et quel type de documents sont susceptibles de comprendre les renseignements demandés.

LES INSTRUMENTS DE RECHERCHE PUBLIÉS

L'Annuaire des dépôts d'archives

Puisque les documents d'archives sont presque toujours des exemplaires disponibles en un seul endroit, la première étape de toute recherche consiste à identifier les dépôts ou les types de dépôts susceptibles de conserver le matériel ou le type de matériel pertinent. Pour aider le chercheur à s'orienter de façon générale, les associations canadiennes d'archivistes publient un *Annuaire des dépots d'archives*[2]. Revue, corrigée et augmentée dans sa plus récente version parue en mai 1981, cette publication vise essentiellement à identifier tous les dépôts d'archives et de manuscrits du Canada et à fournir assez de renseignements à leur sujet pour permettre aux chercheurs d'entrer en contact avec les responsables, qu'il s'agisse d'un dépôt aussi organisé que les Archives publiques du Canada ou d'un dépôt minuscule à vocation régionale où les documents ne peuvent être consultés que sur rendez-vous. Chaque description comprend le nom de l'institution, son adresse, le nom et le titre de la personne qui en est responsable, son numéro de téléphone, les heures d'ouverture du dépôt ainsi qu'une brève description de sa collection. (Tableau B). Cet annuaire est devenu un excellent point de départ et un instrument indispensable pour tout chercheur qui désire vérifier l'existence et la disponibilité de dépôts de documents non publiés de toute sorte.

Tableau B Tiré de Bureau canadien des archivistes, *Annuaire des dépots d'archives canadiens,* Ottawa, 1981.

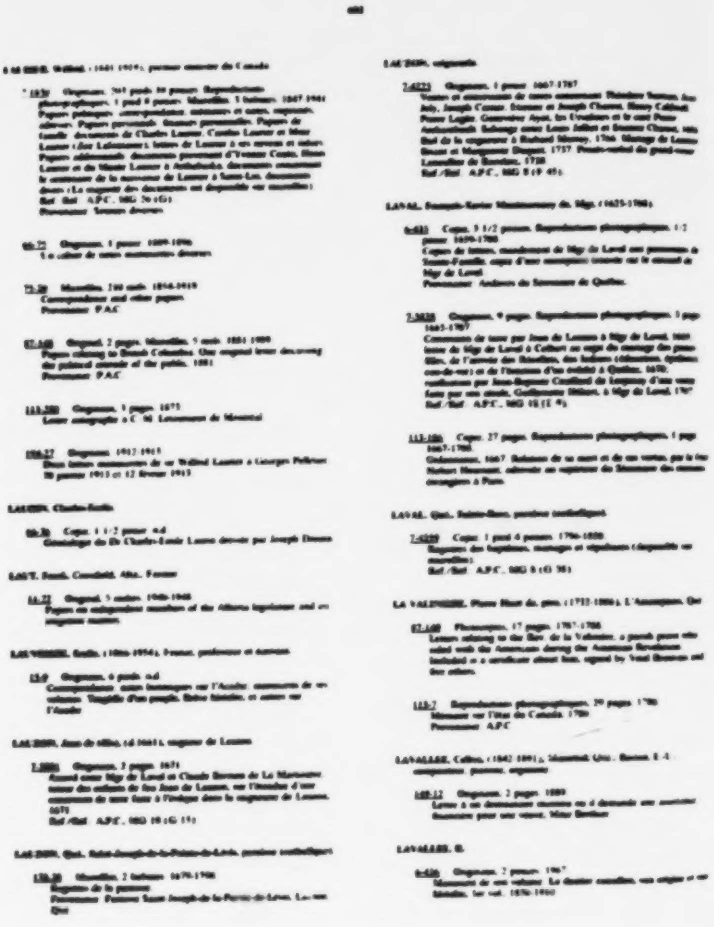


Catalogues collectifs et inventaires spécialisés

Alors que *l'Annuaire des dépots canadiens* s'attache à décrire les institutions, *les catalogues collectifs* en visent surtout le contenu. Dans sa dernière édition complète, celle de 1975, le *Catalogue collectif des manuscrits des archives canadiennes* répertorie et décrit sommairement environ 27,000 fonds d'archives conservés dans 171 dépôts du pays tout en fournissant aux usagers des archives canadiennes un guide leur permettant de localiser les fonds d'archives d'individus et d'organismes[3]. Cette publication volumineuse, qui devait être l'objet d'un supplément annuel, fournit les descriptions sommaires et les renseignements essentiels pour la planification de toute recherche visant à utiliser des fonds d'archives déjà identifiés et classés. (Voir Tableau C).

Le chercheur intéressé par les documents photographiques consultera le *Guide des archives photographiques canadiennes* que les Archives publiques du Canada viennent de publier, en collaboration avec un certain nombre de dépôts d'archives de tout le pays[4]. Les objectifs de ce guide sont les mêmes que ceux du *Catalogue collectif;* le *Guide des archives photographiques* décrit les fonds et collections d'archives photographiques de plus de cent dépôts d'archives canadiens (Voir Tableau D). L'édition

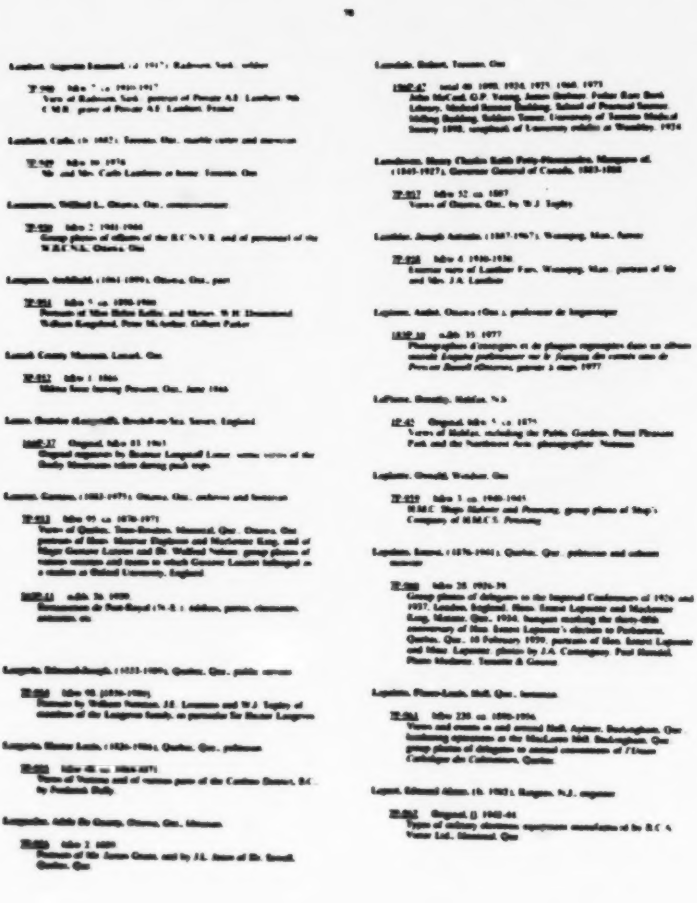
Tableau C Tiré de: R.S. Gordon, dir., *Catalogue collectif des manuscrits des archives canadiennes*, éd. rev., Ottawa, Archives publiques Canada, 1975



provisoire publiée en 1979 compte environ 2,800 notices générales classées selon l'ordre alphabétique de leur titre et un index des sujets contenus dans chacune de ces descriptions.

L'effort très louable des catalogues collectifs ne rejoint forcément que le matériel conservé dans les dépôts d'archives constitués. Il ne saurait être exhaustif. Pour

Tableau D Tiré de: Alain Clavet, coordonnateur, *Guide des archives photographiques canadiennes*, éd. prov., Ottawa, Archives publiques Canada, 1979

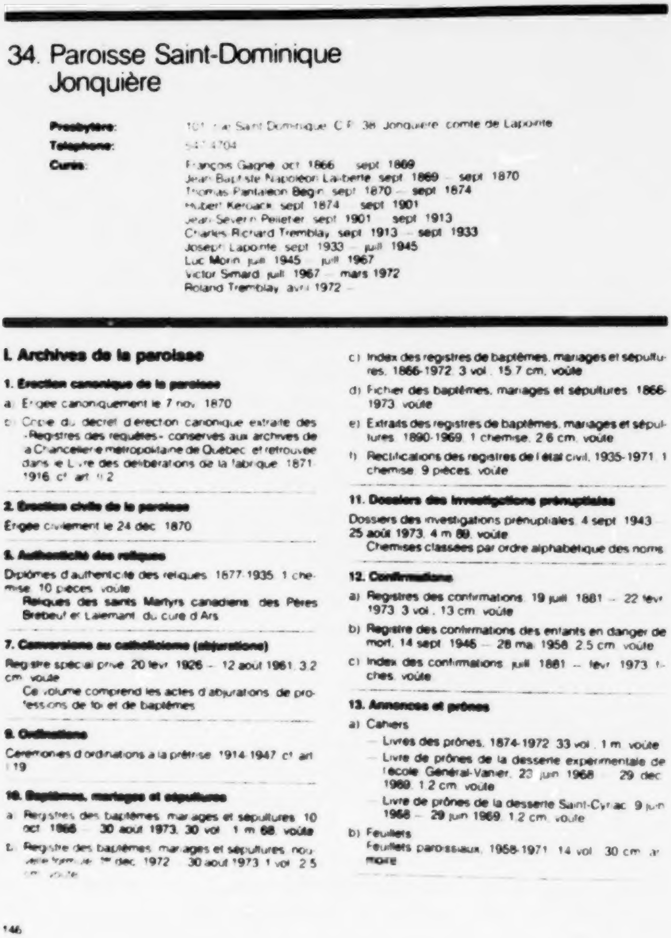


combler cette lacune, des efforts de plus en plus soutenus sont consacrés à l'inventaire du patrimoine archivistique au moyen de relevés systématiques de tout le matériel d'archives, qu'il soit encore en possession de son créateur original ou conservé par des dépôts établis. Dans la plupart des cas, le produit de ces initiatives est constitué par des publications de même type que les catalogues collectifs qui tentent de rejoindre les mêmes objectifs, mais en se restreignant à un réservoir régional ou thématique défini[5]. Ce type d'inventaire régional est parfois même plus détaillé que le *Catalogue collectif des manuscrits* et touche même des collections qui ne sont pas encore dans des dépôts d'archives organisés. C'est le cas de la série *Ontario's Heritage. A Guide to Archival Resources*[6] qui comprend des tomes individuels pour chacune des quinze régions de l'Ontario[7]. L'entreprise est coordonnée par le Toronto Area Archivists Group et chacun des volumes est compilé sous la direction d'un éditeur régional. Au Québec, l'exemple de guide régional le plus élaboré est celui sur les *Sources de l'Histoire du Saguenay Lac St-Jean;* compilé sous la direction d'André Côté[8], le tome I reproduit un inventaire exhaustif des archives paroissiales de cette région. (Voir Tableau E). Le tome II couvrira les archives municipales, le IV, les archives scolaires et le V, les archives religieuses[9]; le III sera un guide bibliographique. Il est à espérer que des initiatives semblables du programme d'inventaire national des Archives nationales du Québec ainsi que des projets similaires dans toutes les provinces du pays se matérialiseront dans les plus brefs délais.

Etats généraux et inventaires de dépôts

Beaucoup plus détaillés que les catalogues collectifs et les inventaires régionaux, les inventaires de dépôts visent essentiellement à fournir le plus grand nombre de renseignements généraux pertinents sur l'ensemble des fonds conservés dans un dépôt donné. Un inventaire préliminaire comme *l'Etat général des fonds et collections d'archives privées conservés à la Division des archives de l'Université Laval*[10] vise à fournir des descriptions générales fournissant pour chacun des fonds des indications sur la nature des documents, sur ses dates inclusives et sur la quantité qu'il représente; après un brève notice biographique ou historique, la description du fonds ou de la collection vise à énumérer le titre des séries qui le composent, à caractériser leur mode de classement et à mentionner les instruments de recherche disponibles. (Voir par exemple, Tableau F). Des guides semblables existent aussi pour un certain nombre de dépôts provinciaux canadiens. Celui des Archives publiques de la Nouvelle-Ecosse date de 1976, celui des Archives nationales du Québec, de 1968[11]. Depuis 1980, la division des archives fédérales des Archives publiques du Canada publie un guide du même genre sous le titre *Documents historiques du Gouvernement du Canada*[12]. En plus de disséminer l'information nécessaire sur les pratiques de cette division des Archives publiques du Canada, cette publication périodique vise à fournir aux chercheurs une liste exhaustive des différentes séries contenues dans tous les groupes de documents conservés par cette Division. (Voir Tableau G). La publication par la division des manuscrits des Archives publiques du Canada d'inventaires généraux de manuscrits vise essentiellement le même objectif. Dans une série de sept volumes, tous les groupes de manuscrits, tous les fonds et toutes les séries à l'intérieur de ces fonds sont décrits de façon générale, fournissant des détails sur la nature, la quantité et les dates extrêmes des documents définissant le contexte de création des fonds et fournissant les renseignements essentiels à leur consultation[13]. Dans ce dernier cas, le compilateur s'est même souvent efforcé de résumer brièvement le contenu et d'indiquer la portée de chacun des fonds.

Tableau E Tiré de: André Côté, *Sources de l'histoire du Saguenay-Lac-St-Jean*, Tome I: Inventaire des archives paroissiales, Québec, Archives nationales du Québec, 1978. (Coll. Instruments de recherche)



34. Paroisse Saint-Dominique
Jonquière

Presbytère: 101, rue Saint-Dominique, C.P. 38, Jonquière, comté de Lapointe
Téléphone: 547-4704
Curés:
François Gagné, oct. 1866 – sept. 1869
Jean-Baptiste-Napoléon Laliberté, sept. 1869 – sept. 1870
Thomas-Pantaléon Bégin, sept. 1870 – sept. 1874
Hubert Kerouack, sept. 1874 – sept. 1901
Jean-Séverin Pelletier, sept. 1901 – sept. 1913
Charles-Richard Tremblay, sept. 1913 – sept. 1933
Joseph Lapointe, sept. 1933 – juil. 1945
Luc Morin, juil. 1945 – juil. 1967
Victor Simard, juil. 1967 – mars 1972
Roland Tremblay, avril 1972 –

I. Archives de la paroisse

1. Érection canonique de la paroisse

a) Érigée canoniquement le 7 nov. 1870

b) Copie du décret d'érection canonique extraite des «Registres des requêtes» conservés aux archives de la Chancellerie métropolitaine de Québec et retrouvée dans le Livre des délibérations de la fabrique, 1871-1916, cf. art. 1.2

2. Érection civile de la paroisse

Érigée civilement le 24 déc. 1870

5. Authenticité des reliques

Diplômes d'authenticité des reliques, 1677-1935, 1 chemise, 10 pièces, voûte
Reliques des saints Martyrs canadiens, des Pères Brébeuf et Lalemant, du curé d'Ars.

7. Conversions au catholicisme (abjurations)

Registre spécial privé, 20 févr. 1926 – 12 août 1961, 3.2 cm, voûte
Ce volume comprend les actes d'abjurations, de professions de foi et de baptêmes.

9. Ordinations

Cérémonies d'ordinations à la prêtrise, 1914-1947, cf. art. 1.19

10. Baptêmes, mariages et sépultures

a) Registres des baptêmes, mariages et sépultures, 10 oct. 1866 – 30 août 1973, 30 vol., 1 m 68, voûte

b) Registre des baptêmes, mariages et sépultures, nouvelle formule, 1er déc. 1972 – 30 août 1973, 1 vol., 2.5 cm, voûte

c) Index des registres de baptêmes, mariages et sépultures, 1866-1972, 3 vol., 15.7 cm, voûte

d) Fichier des baptêmes, mariages et sépultures, 1866-1973, voûte

e) Extraits des registres de baptêmes, mariages et sépultures, 1890-1969, 1 chemise, 2.6 cm, voûte

f) Rectifications des registres de l'état civil, 1935-1971, 1 chemise, 9 pièces, voûte

11. Dossiers des investigations prénuptiales

Dossiers des investigations prénuptiales, 4 sept. 1943 – 25 août 1973, 4 m 89, voûte
Chemises classées par ordre alphabétique des noms.

12. Confirmations

a) Registres des confirmations, 19 juil. 1881 – 22 févr. 1973, 3 vol., 13 cm, voûte

b) Registre des confirmations des enfants en danger de mort, 14 sept. 1945 – 28 mai 1958, 2.5 cm, voûte

c) Index des confirmations, juil. 1881 – févr. 1973, fiches, voûte

13. Annonces et prônes

a) Cahiers
- Livres des prônes, 1874-1972, 33 vol., 1 m, voûte
- Livre de prônes de la desserte expérimentale de l'école Général-Vanier, 23 juin 1968 – 29 déc. 1969, 1.2 cm, voûte
- Livre de prônes de la desserte Saint-Cyriac, 9 juin 1968 – 29 juin 1969, 1.2 cm, voûte

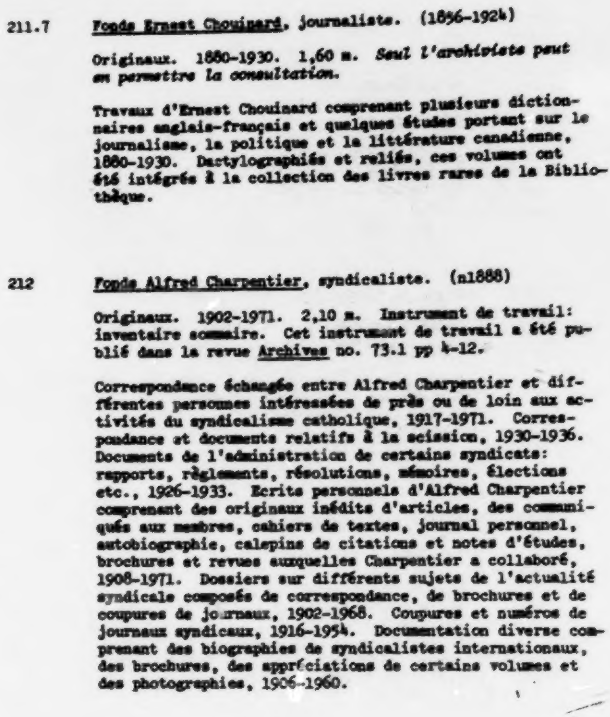
b) Feuillets
Feuillets paroissiaux, 1958-1971, 14 vol., 30 cm, armoire

146

Inventaires de fonds

Certains dépôts d'archives publient des inventaires généraux de leurs fonds les plus importants à un niveau encore plus particulier. Ces inventaires ne décrivent la plupart du temps qu'un seul fonds d'archives et comprennent, outre les descriptions détaillées des séries de documents, un aperçu historique ou un schéma ad-

Tableau F Tiré de: Guy Dinel, comp., *Etat général des fonds et collections d'archives privées,* Québec, Bibliothèque de l'Université Laval, 1977 (Guides bibliographiques, 12).



211.7 Fonds Ernest Chouinard, journaliste. (1856-1924)

Originaux. 1880-1930. 1,60 m. *Seul l'archiviste peut en permettre la consultation.*

Travaux d'Ernest Chouinard comprenant plusieurs dictionnaires anglais-français et quelques études portant sur le journalisme, la politique et la littérature canadienne, 1880-1930. Dactylographiés et reliés, ces volumes ont été intégrés à la collection des livres rares de la Bibliothèque.

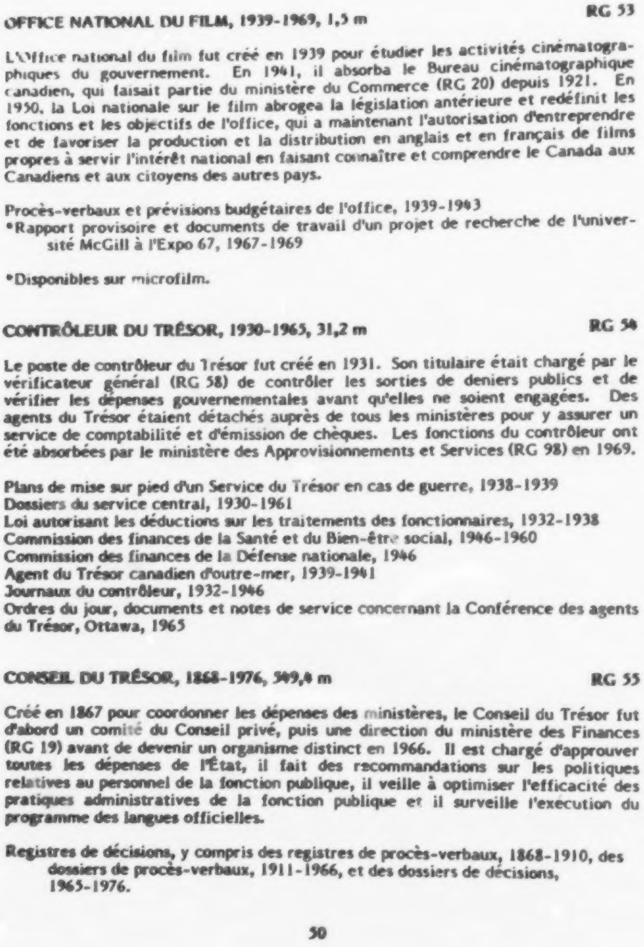
212 Fonds Alfred Charpentier, syndicaliste. (n1888)

Originaux. 1902-1971. 2,10 m. Instrument de travail: inventaire sommaire. Cet instrument de travail a été publié dans la revue Archives no. 73.1 pp 4-12.

Correspondance échangée entre Alfred Charpentier et différentes personnes intéressées de près ou de loin aux activités du syndicalisme catholique, 1917-1971. Correspondance et documents relatifs à la scission, 1930-1936. Documents de l'administration de certains syndicats: rapports, règlements, résolutions, mémoires, élections etc., 1926-1933. Ecrits personnels d'Alfred Charpentier comprenant des originaux inédits d'articles, des communiqués aux membres, cahiers de textes, journal personnel, autobiographie, calepins de citations et notes d'études, brochures et revues auxquelles Charpentier a collaboré, 1908-1971. Dossiers sur différents sujets de l'actualité syndicale composés de correspondance, de brochures et de coupures de journaux, 1902-1968. Coupures et numéros de journaux syndicaux, 1916-1954. Documentation diverse comprenant des biographies de syndicalistes internationaux, des brochures, des appréciations de certains volumes et des photographies, 1906-1960.

ministratif fournissant au chercheur des données sur le contexte d'accumulation des documents et précisant les restrictions à la consultation, s'il y a lieu. Un exemple intéressant de publication systématique d'inventaires de fonds d'archives est celui de la *Collection de l'Inventaire général de la Division des Archives fédérales des Archives publiques*[14]. Le format simple adapté par les éditeurs de cette collection permet des remises à jour faciles à mesure que les fonds sont remaniés ou augmentés par l'acquisition de nouveau matériel. (Voir Tableau H). Ce type de publication peut aussi prendre la forme d'inventaires sommaires ou d'états sommaires comme ceux publiés régulièrement par le Service des archives de l'Université de Montréal[15]. Le but de ces inventaires n'est pas de décrire de façon exhaustive toutes les pièces contenues dans chacun des fonds, mais plutôt de fournir aux chercheurs la description générale des différents types de documents qu'on peut y retrouver. (Voir Tableau I).

Tableau G Tiré de: Terry Cook & Glenn T. Wright, *Documents historiques du gouvernement du Canada.* Ottawa, Archives publiques Canada, 1981.



OFFICE NATIONAL DU FILM, 1939-1969, 1,5 m RG 53

L'Office national du film fut créé en 1939 pour étudier les activités cinématographiques du gouvernement. En 1941, il absorba le Bureau cinématographique canadien, qui faisait partie du ministère du Commerce (RG 20) depuis 1921. En 1950, la Loi nationale sur le film abrogea la législation antérieure et redéfinit les fonctions et les objectifs de l'office, qui a maintenant l'autorisation d'entreprendre et de favoriser la production et la distribution en anglais et en français de films propres à servir l'intérêt national en faisant connaître et comprendre le Canada aux Canadiens et aux citoyens des autres pays.

Procès-verbaux et prévisions budgétaires de l'office, 1939-1943
*Rapport provisoire et documents de travail d'un projet de recherche de l'université McGill à l'Expo 67, 1967-1969

*Disponibles sur microfilm.

CONTRÔLEUR DU TRÉSOR, 1930-1965, 31,2 m RG 54

Le poste de contrôleur du Trésor fut créé en 1931. Son titulaire était chargé par le vérificateur général (RG 58) de contrôler les sorties de deniers publics et de vérifier les dépenses gouvernementales avant qu'elles ne soient engagées. Des agents du Trésor étaient détachés auprès de tous les ministères pour y assurer un service de comptabilité et d'émission de chèques. Les fonctions du contrôleur ont été absorbées par le ministère des Approvisionnements et Services (RG 98) en 1969.

Plans de mise sur pied d'un Service du Trésor en cas de guerre, 1938-1939
Dossiers du service central, 1930-1961
Loi autorisant les déductions sur les traitements des fonctionnaires, 1932-1938
Commission des finances de la Santé et du Bien-être social, 1946-1960
Commission des finances de la Défense nationale, 1946
Agent du Trésor canadien d'outre-mer, 1939-1941
Journaux du contrôleur, 1932-1946
Ordres du jour, documents et notes de service concernant la Conférence des agents du Trésor, Ottawa, 1965

CONSEIL DU TRÉSOR, 1868-1976, 549,4 m RG 55

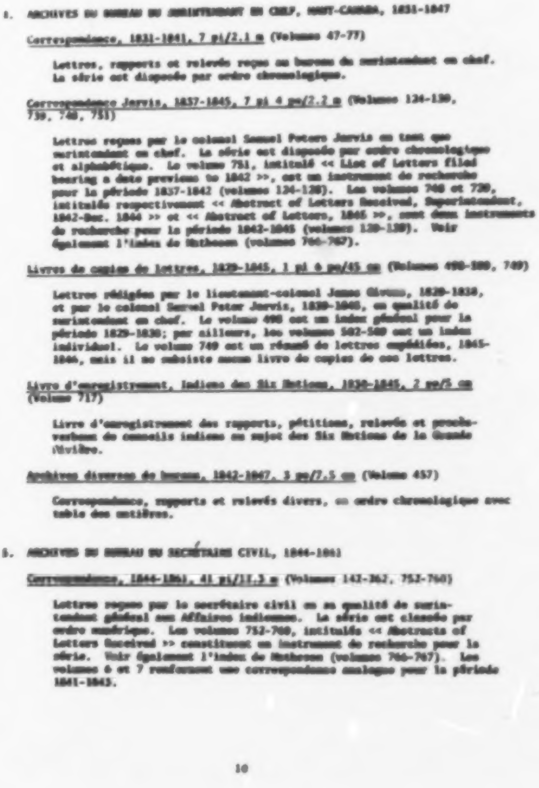
Créé en 1867 pour coordonner les dépenses des ministères, le Conseil du Trésor fut d'abord un comité du Conseil privé, puis une direction du ministère des Finances (RG 19) avant de devenir un organisme distinct en 1966. Il est chargé d'approuver toutes les dépenses de l'État, il fait des recommandations sur les politiques relatives au personnel de la fonction publique, il veille à optimiser l'efficacité des pratiques administratives de la fonction publique et il surveille l'exécution du programme des langues officielles.

Registres de décisions, y compris des registres de procès-verbaux, 1868-1910, des dossiers de procès-verbaux, 1911-1966, et des dossiers de décisions, 1965-1976.

50

En consultant ces inventaires ou états sommaires, le chercheur peut décider si le fonds est suffisamment intéressant pour justifier la poursuite de la consultation, soit en se rendant au dépôt approprié pour dépouiller des instruments de recherche plus détaillés, soit en consultant directement un répertoire plus détaillé s'il est disponible sous forme de publication ou de microfilm.

Tableau H Tiré de: Peter Gillis *et al.*, *Archives ayant trait aux affaires indiennes (RG 10)*, Ottawa, Archives publiques Canada, 1975, (Coll. de l'inventaire général, Division des archives fédérales).



4. ARCHIVES DU BUREAU DU SURINTENDANT EN CHEF, HAUT-CANADA, 1831-1847

Correspondance, 1831-1841, 7 pi/2.1 m (Volumes 47-77)

Lettres, rapports et relevés reçus au bureau du surintendant en chef. La série est disposée par ordre chronologique.

Correspondance Jarvis, 1837-1845, 7 pi 4 po/2.2 m (Volumes 124-130, 739, 748, 751)

Lettres reçues par le colonel Samuel Peters Jarvis en tant que surintendant en chef. La série est disposée par ordre chronologique et alphabétique. Le volume 751, intitulé << List of Letters filed bearing a date previous to 1842 >>, est un instrument de recherche pour la période 1837-1842 (volumes 124-128). Les volumes 748 et 739, intitulés respectivement << Abstract of Letters Received, Superintendent, 1842-Dec. 1844 >> et << Abstract of Letters, 1845 >>, sont deux instruments de recherche pour la période 1842-1845 (volumes 129-130). Voir également l'index de Matheson (volumes 766-767).

Livres de copies de lettres, 1829-1845, 1 pi 6 po/45 cm (Volumes 498-509, 749)

Lettres rédigées par le lieutenant-colonel James Givins, 1829-1838, et par le colonel Samuel Peter Jarvis, 1838-1845, en qualité de surintendant en chef. Le volume 498 est un index général pour la période 1829-1838; par ailleurs, les volumes 502-509 ont un index individuel. Le volume 749 est un résumé de lettres expédiées, 1845-1846, mais il ne subsiste aucun livre de copies de ces lettres.

Livre d'enregistrement, Indiens des Six Nations, 1830-1845, 2 po/5 cm (Volume 717)

Livre d'enregistrement des rapports, pétitions, relevés et procès-verbaux de conseils indiens au sujet des Six Nations de la Grande Rivière.

Archives diverses du bureau, 1842-1847, 3 po/7.5 cm (Volume 457)

Correspondance, rapports et relevés divers, en ordre chronologique avec table des matières.

5. ARCHIVES DU BUREAU DU SECRÉTAIRE CIVIL, 1844-1861

Correspondance, 1844-1861, 41 pi/12.5 m (Volumes 142-362, 752-760)

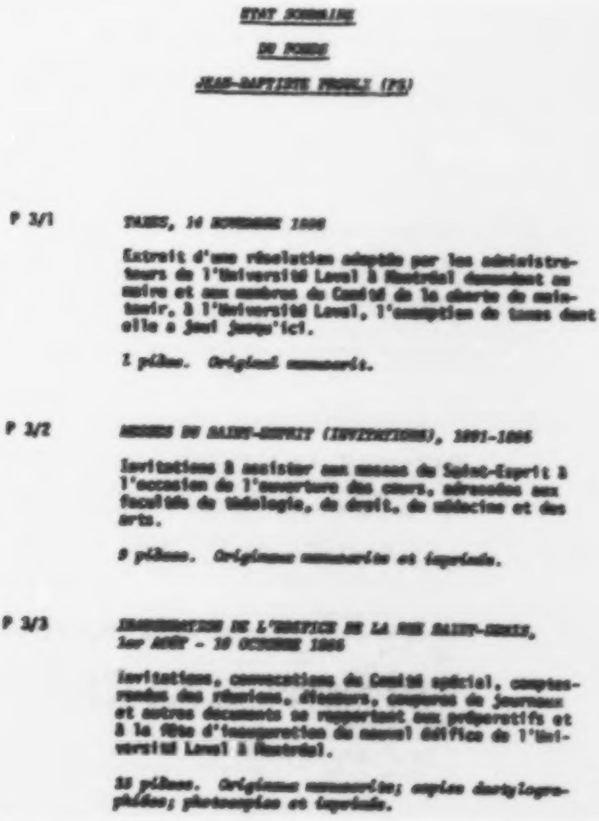
Lettres reçues par le secrétaire civil en sa qualité de surintendant général aux Affaires indiennes. La série est classée par ordre numérique. Les volumes 752-760, intitulés << Abstracts of Letters Received >> constituent un instrument de recherche pour la série. Voir également l'index de Matheson (volumes 766-767). Les volumes 6 et 7 renferment une correspondance analogue pour la période 1841-1843.

10

Les instruments de recherche détaillés: les répertoires

Les autres types d'inventaires qui décrivent les fonds d'archives à un niveau de description plus détaillé que celui de la série ne devraient jamais être utilisés directement par un chercheur qui n'aurait pas préalablement perçu quelque assurance de pouvoir y retrouver du matériel pertinent à sa recherche. La consultation des nombreux répertoires numériques, inventaires analytiques, index de toutes sortes publiés par différents dépôts d'archives devrait toujours suivre la consultation d'instruments de recherche à portée plus générale. Elle doit viser surtout à repérer les pièces les plus pertinentes à l'intérieur de certains fonds. Ces publica-

Tableau I Tiré de: Lucie Beauchemin et Sylvie Brazeau, *Etat sommaire du Fonds Jean-Baptiste-Proulx (P3)*, Montréal, Université de Montréal, 1977 (Publication du Service des archives, No 28).



ETAT SOMMAIRE

DU FONDS

JEAN-BAPTISTE PROULX (P3)

P 3/1 TAXES, [illegible] NOVEMBRE [illegible]

Extrait d'une résolution adoptée par les administrateurs de l'Université Laval à Montréal demandant au maire et aux membres du Comité de la charte de maintenir, à l'Université Laval, l'exemption de taxes dont elle a joui jusqu'ici.

1 pièce. Original manuscrit.

P 3/2 MESSES DU SAINT-ESPRIT (INVITATIONS), [illegible]

Invitations à assister aux messes du Saint-Esprit à l'occasion de l'ouverture des cours, adressées aux facultés de théologie, de droit, de médecine et des arts.

9 pièces. Originaux manuscrits et imprimés.

P 3/3 INAUGURATION DE L'EDIFICE DE LA RUE SAINT-DENIS, 1er AOUT - [illegible] OCTOBRE [illegible]

Invitations, convocations du Comité spécial, comptes-rendus des réunions, discours, coupures de journaux et autres documents se rapportant aux préparatifs et à la fête d'inauguration du nouvel édifice de l'Université Laval à Montréal.

[illegible] pièces. Originaux manuscrits; copies dactylographiées; photocopies et imprimés.

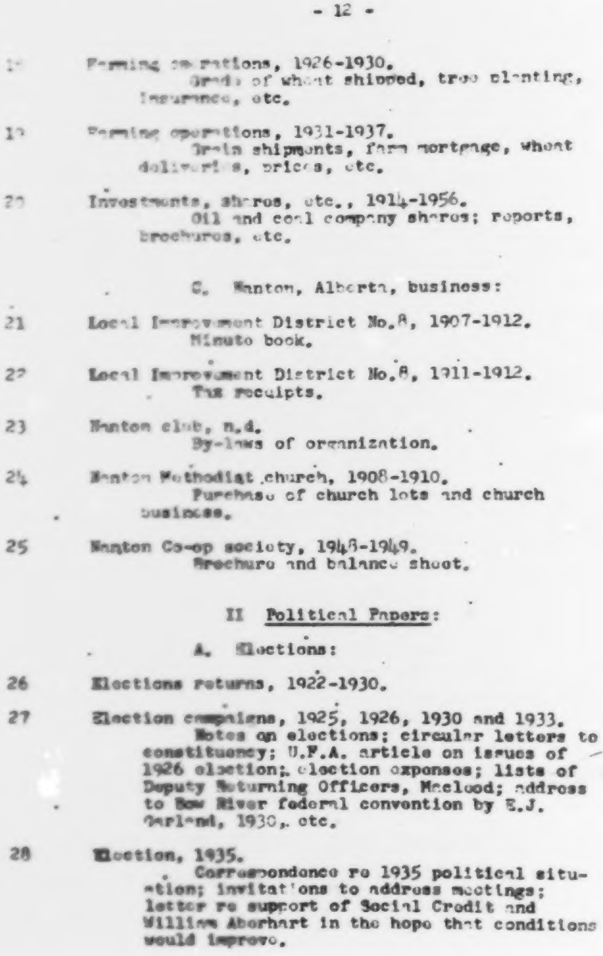
tions souvent fort détaillées et volumineuses ne sont pas d'abord destinées à éclairer le chercheur sur la nature du matériel disponible, comme les autres types d'inventaires; elles visent plutôt à l'aider à localiser avec précision les documents recherchés et à faciliter une consultation ultérieure des documents[8]. (Voir Tableaux J et K).

Parce que les instruments de recherche détaillés visent à décrire chacune des pièces dans un fonds donné, ces publications prennent souvent des proportions gigantesques, qui les rendent très coûteuses à publier.

LES NOUVELLES FORMES D'INVENTAIRES ET DE RÉPERTOIRES

A cet égard, des solutions nouvelles sont élaborées pour continuer de mettre à la

Tableau 5 Tiré de: Glenbow Archives, *George Gibson Coote Papers (1907-1956)*, Calgary, 1970 (Glenbow Archives Series No 4)



- 12 -

18 Farming operations, 1926-1930.
Grades of wheat shipped, tree planting, insurance, etc.

19 Farming operations, 1931-1937.
Grain shipments, farm mortgage, wheat deliveries, prices, etc.

20 Investments, shares, etc., 1914-1956.
Oil and coal company shares; reports, brochures, etc.

C. Nanton, Alberta, business:

21 Local Improvement District No.8, 1907-1912.
Minute book.

22 Local Improvement District No.8, 1911-1912.
Tax receipts.

23 Nanton club, n.d.
By-laws of organization.

24 Nanton Methodist church, 1908-1910.
Purchase of church lots and church business.

25 Nanton Co-op society, 1948-1949.
Brochure and balance sheet.

II Political Papers:

A. Elections:

26 Elections returns, 1922-1930.

27 Election campaigns, 1925, 1926, 1930 and 1933.
Notes on elections; circular letters to constituency; U.F.A. article on issues of 1926 election; election expenses; lists of Deputy Returning Officers, Macleod; address to Bow River federal convention by E.J. Garland, 1930, etc.

28 Election, 1935.
Correspondence re 1935 political situation; invitations to address meetings; letter re support of Social Credit and William Aberhart in the hope that conditions would improve.

disposition des chercheurs ce genre d'outil descriptif. Les Archives publiques du Canada et les Archives nationales du Québec ont toutes deux innové en présentant des solutions différentes pour résoudre le problème des coûts de production des répertoires et des instruments de recherche détaillés. Les Archives publiques du Canada ont inauguré une série de publications sur microfiche des inventaires analytiques de leurs fonds les plus importants et les plus utilisés. Grâce à la diffusion sur microfiche des principaux instruments de recherche, il est désormais possible au

Tableau K Tiré de: Jacques Ducharme et Augustine Prévost, *Répertoire numérique du Fonds Edouard-Montpetit* (P8), Montréal, Université de Montréal, 1976 (Publications du Service des Archives, No 14)

P 8/6 MEMBRE DE LA CHAMBRE DE COMMERCE, 1940

Certificat encadré de M. Edouard Montpetit attestant qu'il est membre actif de la Chambre de commerce du district de Montréal daté du 15 janvier 1940.

P 8/7 à
P 8/25 CORRESPONDANCE GENERALE - ECOLE DES SCIENCES SOCIALES, ECONOMIQUES ET POLITIQUES - 1920-1940

Correspondance reçue ou adressée par Edouard Montpetit en tant que directeur de l'Ecole des sciences sociales, économiques et politiques de l'Université de Montréal. Les articles sont classés par ordre alphabétique des correspondants.

P 8/7	-	A	(1920-1940)
P 8/8	-	B	(1920-1939)
P 8/9	-	C	(1920-1939)
P 8/10	-	D	(1922-1939)
P 8/11	-	E	(1920-1938)
P 8/12	-	F	(1921-1939)
P 8/13	-	G	(1925-1939)
P 8/14	-	H	(1923-1931)
P 8/15	-	L	(1920-1940)
P 8/16	-	M	(1920-1937)
P 8/17	-	N	(1925)
P 8/18	-	O	(1929-1938)
P 8/19	-	P	(1920-1940)
P 8/20	-	Q	(1932)
P 8/21	-	R	(1921-1939)
P 8/22	-	S	(1920-1939)
P 8/23	-	T	(1920-1939)
P 8/24	-	V	(1921-1940)
P 8/25	-	W	(1920-1936)

chercheur d'accomplir dans sa localité une grande partie du travail de repérage des sources avant même de se rendre au dépôt d'archives approprié. Inauguré en 1977, ce projet de publication devait se matérialiser à raison de 75 instruments de recherche et 200 fiches par année.

Dans leur nouvelle série *d'instruments de recherche et inventaires détaillés,* les Archives nationales du Québec ont combiné l'ancien et le moderne. Une nouvelle collection intitulée "Instruments de recherche - Inventaires détaillés" fut lancée en 1978. Selon les standards de ce projet, l'inventaire analytique comme tel est publié sous forme de microfiches comme ceux des Archives publiques du Canada: mais ces microfiches sont insérées dans la pochette d'une publication conventionelle de format pratique qui fournit une description sommaire du contenu du fonds en même temps qu'il fournit certains renseignements biographiques susceptibles d'aider le chercheur dans sa consultation; il comprend aussi un index qui permettra au chercheur de localiser de façon assez précise des sujets ou des auteurs précis sans avoir à scruter toutes les descriptions fournies sur l'inventaire analytique de la microfiche[17]. Ce modèle d'inventaire analytique et de guide de fonds est susceptible de se perpétuer de façon rapide en raison de l'utilité qu'il représente pour le chercheur et des économies de coût que la formule permet de réaliser.

LES GUIDES THÉMATIQUES

De plus en plus, certains travaux de recherches préliminaires ont suivi l'exemple des meilleurs essais bibliographiques en présentant la description des sources d'archives susceptibles d'intéresser le chercheur à même leur description du matériel disponible sur certains sujets donnés. Tous les auteurs de la collection de *Communiqué: Canadian Studies*[18] (publiée par l'Association des collèges communautaires du Canada), par exemple, ont fait un effort sérieux pour dépister et décrire les principales sources primaires. D'autres publications avec un thème plus défini ont aussi bien réussi à diffuser les connaissances nécessaires sur les fonds les plus importants. Qu'il suffise ici de relever les exemples de Russell Hann, Gregory Kealey *et al.* dans *Primary Sources in Canadian Working Class History. 1860-1930* (Kitchener: Dumont Press, 1973) et d'Yvan Lamonde dans *Les Bibliothèques de collectivités à Montréal (17-19e siecle)* (Montréal: Bibliothèque nationale 1979). Il se peut également que l'exemple des archives de l'Université McGill soil suivi: au lieu de publier des inventaires exhaustifs de certains de ses fonds, ce dépôt d'archives publie maintenant des descriptions générales de tous les fonds susceptibles de contenir des données sur certains sujets donnés. En 1979, par exemple, Faith Wallis et Robert Michel ont publié *Documentation relative à l'étude de la femme aux Archives de l'Université McGill* (Montréal: Université McGill, 1979).

CONCLUSION

Comment conclure une communication qui s'est surtout attachée à décrire la diversité des types de publications d'instruments de recherche en archives? L'utilisateur autant que le documentaliste qui guide les chercheurs devraient être au courant de leur diversité et du rôle bien précis que chaque type est supposé jouer. Le conservateur ou le documentaliste devrait être aussi conscient du caractère périodique de certaines de ces publications et ne pas hésiter à élaguer les versions les moins courantes.

Le bibliographe, pour sa part, devrait dépasser le niveau des sources secondaires auxquelles il se limite trop souvent et s'interroger non seulement sur les sources archivistiques disponibles, mais également sur les ressources muséologiques qui demeurent encore trop souvent négligées.

Il reste, enfin, aux archivistes canadiens, à leurs associations et leurs plus grandes institutions, à amorcer un sérieux travail de standardisation des divers types d'instruments de recherche. Bien qu'il soit évident qu'une certaine diversité continue d'être nécessaire pour décrire le matériel à divers niveaux de généralisation, il serait certes possible de normaliser les règles de présentation et de description de chacun des types différents afin d'en faciliter la compréhension par le chercheur. Convient-il de déplorer encore une fois à cet égard l'absence complète de travaux de recherche sur ces problèmes? La même conclusion s'appliquera-t-elle encore dans cinq ans lorsque sera réévalué l'état de la bibliographie canadienne?

RÉFÉRENCE

1 Voir, entre autres, la bibliographie courante publiée dans la revue *Archives* de l'Association des archivistes du Québec et la bibliographie rétrospective publiée dans *Archivaria* du numéro 1 (Winter 1975/1976) au 6 (Summer 1978). Une bibliographie abrégée portant plus spécifiquement sur le matériel canadien est disponible dans Marcel Cava et Marion Bevea, "Archives au Canada" *Communiqué* 4 (Printemps 1980): 35-46.

2 Beattie, J.; Clavet, A. et al., eds. *Directory of Canadian Archives/Annuaire des dépôts d'archives canadiens* s.l.: Bureau canadien des archivistes, 1981.

3 Archives publiques du Canada. *Catalogue collectif des manuscrits des archives canadiennes*. Ottawa: 1975. Des suppléments ont été publiés en 1976 et 1978.

4 *Guide to Canadian Photographic Archives/Guides des archives photographiques canadiennes*, édition provisoire. Ottawa: Archives publiques, 1979.

5 Voir, par exemple, Conférence religieuse canadienne. *Guide sommaire des archives des communautés religieuses au Canada/Abridged Guide to the Archives of Religious Communities in Canada*. Ottawa: Université St-Paul, 1974.

6 Russel, V.L., gen. ed. *Ontario's Heritage*. Toronto: Toronto Area Archivists Group, 1978-1980. 3 vols.

7 Jusqu'ici trois volumes ont été publiés pour couvrir les régions de Peterborough (vol. 1), Peel (vol. 3) et le nord-est ontarien (vol. 13).

8 Côté, André. *Sources de l'histoire du Saguenay-Lac St. Jean*. Québec: Archives nationales du Québec, 1978.

9 Le volume est un *Guide bibliographique* qui a déjà été publié en 1977 par la direction générale du Patrimoine (dossier no. 30).

10 Par Guy Dinel. Québec: Université Laval, 1977; voir aussi Jacques Ducharme et Michel Landry. *Guide des collections et fonds privés conservés au service des archives*. Montréal: Université de Montréal, 1974; Murielle Doyle-Frenière. *Etat sommaire des archives de la ville de Québec*. Québec: 1977. (Les Archives de la ville de Québec. Publication no. 3).

11 Nova Scotia, Public Archives of Nova Scotia, *Inventory of Manuscripts in the Public Archives of Nova Scotia*. Halifax: 1976; Québec. Ministère des Affaires culturelles. *L'Etat général des archives publiques et privées du Québec*. Québec: 1968.

12 Cook, Terry; et Wright, Glenn T. *Documents historiques du gouvernement du Canada*. Ottawa: Archives publiques, 1981.

13 Canada. Archives publiques. *Inventaire général - manuscrits*. Ottawa, 1971-1975. 7 vols.

14 Canada. Archives publiques. Division des archives fédérales. *Collection de l'inventaire général*, plusieurs volumes, 1975-

15 Voir, par exemple, Lucie Beauchemin et Sylvie Brazeau. *Etat sommaire du Fonds Jean-Baptiste-Proulx*. Montréal: Université de Montréal, 1977; J.M. Parker. *The University of Alberta. A Guide to the President's Papers, 1928-36. Robert Charles Wallace*. Edmonton: University of Alberta, 1973.

16 A titre d'exemple, Jacques Ducharme et Augustine Prévost. *Répertoire numérique du Fonds Edouard-Montpetit*. Montréal: Université de Montréal, 1976; Jacques Ducharme et Michel Landry. *Inventaire analytique du Fonds Zotique-Racicot*. Montréal: Université de Montréal, 1977; Monique Signori-Laforest. *Inventaire analytique des archives du diocèse de Saint-Jean-de-Québec, 1688-1900*. Québec: Archives nationales du Québec, 1976; Gilles Janson et Lynda Cloutier. *Répertoire numérique détaillé du fonds du Frère Jérôme*. Montréal: Université du Québec à Montréal, 1981; W.J. Chirwinski. *Guide to the Papers of Henry Marshall Tory, 1908-1927*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Archives, 1967; *George G. Coote Papers*. Glenbow Archives Series. Calgary: Glenbow-Alberta Institute, 1969.

17 Voir par exemple, Léo Sancoucy, dir. *Inventaire des archives de la Société d'histoire régionale de Saint-Hyacinthe*. Coll. Instruments de recherche, Inventaires détaillés, No. 3. Québec: Archives nationales du Québec. 1978.

18 Collection *Communiqué: Canadian Studies*. Publiée par l'Association des collèges communautaires du Canada.

BIBLIOGRAPHIC SERVICES AND CANADIAN AUDIOVISUAL MATERIALS

LORELEI M. ROGERS
Communications Officer
In-Service Project, Faculty of Education, University of Calgary
2500 University Drive N.W., Calgary, Alberta T2N 1N4

THE VIEWS in this paper are those of a user of stored knowledge – particularly knowledge that describes, defines or interprets the Canadian experience and does so through the medium of non-print materials. The questions of quality in bibliographic construction or the intricacies of bibliographic control will not be addressed.

When examining bibliographical services for Canadian non-print materials there are three success stories to be told. Unfortunately all three stories have flaws and problems but in each case the flaws lead back to a common factor that suggest that improvements and even resolution of the problems can be found.

CANADIAN NON-PRINT PROJECT

The first partial success story is the Canadian Non-Print Project. Conceived by Helene Rothwell under the auspices of the Centre for Research in Librarianship at the University of Toronto the first phase of the project is now complete. It is a standard catalogue of significant filmstrips that have been produced in Canada for children and young adults. The Book *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips*[1] takes the form of an annotated bibliography designed as a working tool for Canadian schools and libraries. It can be used to assess and develop collections, assist in cataloging and classifying, and aid with reference services.

The 537-page volume contains 1800 sound and silent filmstrips all produced prior to August 1978. The catalogue presents entries for the materials in a classified arrangement (using the Dewey Decimal Classification) and provides a PRECIS subject index, a title index, a series index, and a list of distributors.

As one reviewer says ". . . this volume is destined to be a landmark in Canadian mediagraphy."[2] But there are areas of concern about the Canadian Non-Print Project, specifically in its first phase – *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips*. This catalogue constitutes a selected bibliography including price and distributor with its cutoff point being mid-1978. Librarians may be expected to have their copies of the book by June 1981. It can be assumed that virtually all prices in the catalogue are now incorrect despite the time and energy invested in their original verification. One can also expect that a significant number of out-of-print items will have appeared in the intervening time. Further, the distribution of small format materials, particularly of Canadian origin, is a high risk business with frequent realignments so much of that information will soon be outdated and therefore of questionable use.

What is needed is a *Non-Print In Print* to support in-depth works like *Canadian Selection* and to make it a useful tool over time. However, until comprehensive rather than selected bibliographic data is available such a tool seems only a dream.

A second, and overriding concern with the Canadian Non-Print Project is with the method necessarily used to gather the information for the catalogue. The materials information was obtained in a most tortuous way. With the involvement of publishers, distributors and school boards, Ms. Rothwell ". . . searched untiringly across Canada . . . ."[3]. It was amazing to Calgary librarians that the curriculum lab[4] of the Calgary Board of Education proved a useful and even necessary resource for a task with a scope far beyond the mandate of the curriculum lab. No national collection was available from which to make selections.

Updating of the catalogue will be done ". . . if funding is forthcoming . . ."[5] but that task will be no easier than the original. Producers will have to be approached one by one; contacts will have to be made with school boards and other agencies who produce and market filmstrips and no one will be absolutely sure that a significant piece of material has not been missed. No national collection will help in the identification of new items.

The explanation for this absence of a national collection of silent and sound filmstrips rests in the actions of the National Library of Canada. A letter from the Special Assistant to the National Librarian states:

> Kits composed solely of audio-visual materials are not actively collected.[6]

There is no clearing house for the registering of copyright small-format materials, no national repository where a complete picture of the production of Canadian materials can be pieced together.

NATIONAL FILM BOARD

The second partial success story is the National Film Board's *Plan For An Information/Distribution System For Canadian Audiovisual Products*.[7] The plan, first presented in October 1977, was the result of work done by a Task Force which

> was specifically assigned the responsibility of designing a model of a Canadian information and distribution system which would be endorsed by those implicated in such a system: the N.F.B., Canadian film users, producers and distributors, libraries, educational institutions, provincial governments and the Government of Canada.[8]

While beginning with National Film Board products it was planned that

> As other collections are added to the data base, production, distribution and availability information will be built up, so that eventually the outcome can be a union list of Canadian non-print material complete with location codes and borrowing or sales information.[9]

This project is currently at the point of having about 6,000 N.F.B. films entered on the data base along with 2,500 filmstrips (not all N.F.B.). As a consultant to the N.F.B. project states, ". . . the anticipated end result of the project is a machine-based bibliography of Canadian non-print . . .".[10]

The concerns with the N.F.B. Information/Distribution Plan are with its conception and the conflicts among the varying roles that the N.F.B. has taken onto itself. The N.F.B. is a producer of both film and small-format materials. As such it is seen by other producers as a competitor. Now this competitor in the tight media market has designed an information/distribution plan which will, in theory, serve all Canadian producers.

The possible trouble spots are two: First, how will it be guaranteed that all producers are included in the data base? The data base will certainly become a guide to acquisitions and as such it is imperative that all products be included. That is the only way to insure a healthy production climate especially for small independent producers. The second question is a related one: What will be the time lag between the appearance of new N.F.B. products in the data base and the appearance of new materials from other production sources?

Both of these questions are worrisome because the N.F.B., like the Canadian Non-Print Project, has no consistent, reliable source of information.

> There exists in Canada no central coordinating body with the responsibility for holding AV items – and providing bibliographic data for them. Consequently, the lack of a legal deposit for AV products compounds the problem of systematic and comprehensive bibliographic control.[11]

The compilers will have to depend on the good will of producers and the strength of their contacts to produce a truly national non-print data base.

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY AUTOMATION SYSTEMS

The third partial success to be discussed here is UTLAS, the University of Toronto Library Automation Systems. The UTLAS network is important to this discussion since both the Canadian Non-Print Project and the N.F.B. Information/Distribution Plan are shared with UTLAS. UTLAS was responsible for the computer print-out of *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips*. The first stage of on-line access to the N.F.B. system will be by way of the UTLAS network and then later through the terminals of the N.F.B.'s libraries.

It is understood that N.F.B. will depend on input from the UTLAS network for small-format information for the Information/Distribution Plan and the filmstrips of *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips* currently make up the bulk of the small-format items claimed for the N.F.B. plan. It is encouraging to have UTLAS integrally involved because UTLAS has a fast-growing base of non-print data with input coming from such sources as the Metropolitan Toronto Library Board, the Mississauga Public Library (which also processes films for Peel Board of Education), North York Public Library and recently Calgary Board of Education with its extensive data file. However the appearance of an item in the UTLAS data base does not occur until the item has been acquired by an UTLAS participant or has become a part of the source file of a national library.[12] UTLAS has no single repository where it can search for new or missed Canadian items and, to the degree that the N.F.B. Information/

Distribution Plan rests on UTLAS data, neither does N F B

The aforementioned three projects are serious attempts at comprehensive bibliographies. They are appealing and exciting visions of what could be. But they are not the only attempts at bibliographic services for Canadian non-print materials and time should be taken for some general observations.

CONTENT VS FORMAT

The best thing that could happen to non-print materials would be if everyone concerned with the development of bibliographies would give more attention to content and less attention to format. The recording and storing of mankind's accumulated knowledge is crucial to the continuation of the human race. At one time shamans, storytellers and tribal artists were charged with the task. Now researchers, authors, producers, publishers, librarians, bibliographers, teachers carry on the role of capturing, storing and transmitting knowledge.

Most of the labels currently used relate to print and the format known as book. Such labels may be impediments as the last two decades of the twentieth century are played out. While the printed word has not been with mankind as long as the craft of the tribal artists or storytellers it permeates man's thinking. Everything is labelled by its relationship to the written text. Other labels seem awkward. "Resource Centre" is debated and "mediagraphy" is uncomfortable on the tongue. So new techniques for storing human knowledge are labelled by what they are *not* rather than by what they are.

And because new formats do not always fit well into routines used for dealing with print the tendency is to discuss print in terms of content and other media in terms of format. Does it not seem strange that a bibliography of Canadian folklore is developed with all print materials arranged into five sections by content and then *all* records and *all* films placed by format in two sections at the back?[13] Non-print media seem always to be placed at the back like an afterthought or a last resort.

For some time now librarians have debated the question of integrated card catalogues and integrated shelving. It is time to give serious thought to integrated bibliographies. If the student of Canadian Studies wants to know what Canadians have stored about their experience with the Great Depression she should be able to determine what is stored in all formats and then select the information and the format with which she prefers to work.

BUDGET

Ironically, that idea of access to a full range of formats seems even now to be slipping further away. Tight money has taxed all library budgets and educational dollars. That portion of budget destined for purchase of non-traditional formats seems to be the most easily cut. Les Modolo describes the realities of the current situation:

> I frequently ask A/V Co-ordinators, librarians, trustees, groups of teachers and superintendents how much money they think is being spent in Canada annually by boards of

education, public libraries, colleges and universities and community purchases in general for films, tapes, filmstrips, slides, etc. I emphasize that they should *exclude* everything else, books for example, when they give their "guesstimate". The replies are embarrassing, not to them, but to me, because somehow I feel part responsible for not setting the record straight. The replies range from as low an annual spending figure of $100,000,000. (One-hundred million dollars) to as high as $4,000,000,000. (Four billion dollars). In actual fact in 1979 the total figure was $14,669,400. (Fourteen million, six-hundred and sixty-nine thousand). That figure is National. When you examine the figures on the five year comparison chart, you will see that district level sales declined from 1975 (9,487,000.) to 1979 (9,317,100.); and that building level sales declined from 1975 (8,299,000.) to 1979 (5,352,300.). The combined decline was from $17,787,000 in 1975 to $14,669,400 in 1979. The figures are cause for concern on the part of all of us; distributors, purchasers and users of these materials.[14]

Should this attitude on the part of the budget managers continue it may be that sophisticated bibliographical systems will have been designed for non-existent materials. There were eleven major commercial small-format producers putting Canadian materials on the market in 1975. Now only two or three are left, one of which is the government-supported National Film Board. Some of the others, while still resident in Canada, produce materials primarily for the more lucrative foreign markets. The continuing erosion of budgets dedicated to alternative formats can only result in the disappearance of the Canadian viewpoint from the content knowledge stored in non-print media. Bibliographical services will then only fill an archival function.

CHANGING FORMATS

This reluctance or slowness to accept audio-visual materials as useful vehicles for storing and transmitting knowledge is now a compounding problem. *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips* does not deal with filmstrips sold only in kits. Yet, just as the single filmstrip was displaced by the filmstrip kit in the 70's, 1980 saw the strong emergence of new generation or hybrid packages. These packages usually include at least two audio-visual formats along with print in conventional and non-conventional forms. While libraries are still coming to terms with the integrity of filmstrips, technology is passing them by. It does seem that there should be a ray of light in the search for bibliographic information about such hybrid kits since they clearly fall within the mandate of the National Library.

> Through purchase and legal deposit the [National] Library collects educational kits which are composed of both text and audio-visual materials.[15]

Yet in 1980 not a single item was listed in the Educational Kit section of *Canadiana*. Examining the work of the Calgary Board of Education's Program Resources Group during the same year[16] it can be seen that their suggested titles list shows 39 educational kits. While most of these were filmstrip kits they had other components such as teacher's guides, activity cards and duplicating masters which would, it seems, qualify them as educational kits. The role of the National Library in this field seems less than adequate.

The National Library does not deal with films but rather contracts that work with the Canadian Film Institute which produces an annual listing titled *Film Canadiana*. Producers claim that that listing is inaccurate and out-of-date. They suggest that a better source of information about Canadian film is the journal of the Ontario Film Association. Once again the National Library seems to be providing something less than national leadership.

Little attention has been given to the most common new format of all – the video cassette or video disc. Until recently the literature, particularly in Canada, has ignored the phenomenon even though the first video cassette commercial libraries are beginning to make their appearance. Video cassettes produce a whole new range of problems including limited copyright and restricted distribution. Yet there is no doubt that some of the best non-print material available is even now on video cassette and the library field seems hesitant to address bibliographical services for this format.

CONCLUSIONS

What conclusions can be drawn from the rigidity of labels, the slowness to change and the three valiant attempts to forge ahead? Rothwell had to travel across the country searching out materials. The National Film Board will depend on the cooperation of its competitors and user input to UTLAS to create a complete national non-print union catalogue. UTLAS members will share information about their non-print acquisition even while the numbers of such acquisitions decrease. *Film Canadiana* is unable to accurately reflect the work of the industry. *Canadiana* seems unable to do as good a job as the Calgary Board of Education in identifying educational kits. Meanwhile potentially lucrative video cassettes and video discs will spawn a new creature – the commercial library.

RECOMMENDATIONS

What should be done? The National Library should be strengthened so that it is a national repository for all copyright materials regardless of format. Information from that expanded collection should then be shared quickly and the sharing must be done more quickly than *Canadiana* and more accurately than *Film Canadiana*.

A national repository would allow for the creation of specialized bibliographies, by format and by content. It would ensure that all materials available would be placed on a data base such as that of the N.F.B. and might eventually lead to a much needed *Non-Print in Print*. Much has been learned in the past five years about data bases, computer networking and management of non-print materials. It is past the time when this knowledge should be put to use in the creation of a true national library.

Because of the limitations of the National Library the Canadian Non-Print Project has no way of knowing that it has made its selections from the total range of Canadian materials; National Film Board will never know if it has achieved a truly comprehensive union holding file; UTLAS will have in its data base only items acquired by its members and other national libraries; librarians will never have access to a *Non-Print in Print* and, ultimately, because there is not a true national library the users of materials and the nation are the poorer.

Nothing less than a national effort can rationalize the creation, production, management and use of Canadian non-print materials.

REFERENCES

1 Rothwell, Helene de F., comp. *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980.

2 Frank Karas, draft of a review of *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips* written for *Emergency Librarian.*

3 Wilkinson, John P. Preface to *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips,* p. viii.

4 The curriculum laboratory of the Calgary Board of Education contains evaluated, selected materials which support and enhance the various Alberta curricula. It is designed to assist teachers and teacher librarians in program planning and budgeting. It is not a retrospective collection.

5 Wilkinson, p. viii.

6 M. Hillman, Special Assistant to the National Librarian, to Lorelei Rogers, Ottawa, April 8, 1981.

7 Canada. National Film Board. *A Plan For An Introduction/Distribution System For Canadian Audiovisual Products.* October, 1977.

8 Ibid., p. 1.

9 Canada. National Film Board. Distribution Branch. *Proposed Course of Action to Implement An Information/Distribution System For Canadian Audio-Visual Products.* By Colin Neale. November 25, 1977, p. 2.

10 Mary Dykstra, Associate Professor, School of Library Service, Dalhousie University to Anne Piternick, March 13, 1981.

11 Gardhouse, Judy. "NFB develops delivery service for Canadian non-print media." *Canadian Library Journal* 37 (April 1980):73.

12 University of Toronto Library Automation Systems. *UTLAS A Profile.* January, 1981, p. 4.

13 Fowke, Edith Fulton. *A Bibliography of Canadian Folklore in English.* Downsview: York University, 1976.

14 Modolo, Les. "Report on Funding to EMPDAC (Educational Media Producers and Distributors Association of Canada) Members." November, 1980, p. 1.

15 Hillman.

16 1980 was not a typical year for the Calgary Board of Education. A lengthy teachers' strike meant that no evaluation or selection of materials was done between May 27 and September 27, 1980.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

BROWN, JAMES W. *Nonprint Media Information Networking: Status and Potentials.* ERIC Clearinghouse, 1976.

CANADA. Department of Secretary of State. *Big World Small Format: A Study of the Use and Distribution of 16mm Film, Tape and A-V Materials.* 1976.

CANADA. National Film Board. *A Plan For an Information/Distribution System For Canadian Audio-visual Products.* October 1977.

CANADA. National Film Board. Distribution Branch. *Proposed Course of Action to Implement an Information/Distribution System For Canadian Audio-Visual Products,* by Colin Neale. November 25, 1977.

FOWKE, EDITH FULTON. *A Bibliography of Canadian Folklore in English.* Downsview: York University, 1976.

GARDHOUSE, JUDY. "NFB develops delivery service for Canadian non-print media." *Canadian Library Journal* 37 (April 1980): 73-76.

National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography. Proceedings. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1977.

The Professional Librarian's Reader in Library Automation and Technology. White Plains, New York: Knowledge Industry Publications, Inc., 1980.

ROTHWELL, HELEN DE F., comp. *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980.

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY AUTOMATION SYSTEMS. *UTLAS: A Profile.* January 1981.

WEIHS, JEAN; LEWIS, SHIRLEY; MACDONALD, JANET. *Nonbook Materials: The Organization of Integrated Collections.* Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, 1979.

The National Library does not deal with films but rather contracts that work with the Canadian Film Institute which produces an annual listing titled *Film Canadiana*. Producers claim that that listing is inaccurate and out-of-date. They suggest that a better source of information about Canadian film is the journal of the Ontario Film Association. Once again the National Library seems to be providing something less than national leadership.

Little attention has been given to the most common new format of all – the video cassette or video disc. Until recently the literature, particularly in Canada, has ignored the phenomenon even though the first video cassette commercial libraries are beginning to make their appearance. Video cassettes produce a whole new range of problems including limited copyright and restricted distribution. Yet there is no doubt that some of the best non-print material available is even now on video cassette and the library field seems hesitant to address bibliographical services for this format.

CONCLUSIONS

What conclusions can be drawn from the rigidity of labels, the slowness to change and the three valiant attempts to forge ahead? Rothwell had to travel across the country searching out materials. The National Film Board will depend on the cooperation of its competitors and user input to UTLAS to create a complete national non-print union catalogue. UTLAS members will share information about their non-print acquisition even while the numbers of such acquisitions decrease. *Film Canadiana* is unable to accurately reflect the work of the industry. *Canadiana* seems unable to do as good a job as the Calgary Board of Education in identifying educational kits. Meanwhile potentially lucrative video cassettes and video discs will spawn a new creature – the commercial library.

RECOMMENDATIONS

What should be done? The National Library should be strengthened so that it is a national repository for all copyright materials regardless of format. Information from that expanded collection should then be shared quickly and the sharing must be done more quickly than *Canadiana* and more accurately than *Film Canadiana*.

A national repository would allow for the creation of specialized bibliographies, by format and by content. It would ensure that all materials available would be placed on a data base such as that of the N.F.B. and might eventually lead to a much needed *Non-Print in Print*. Much has been learned in the past five years about data bases, computer networking and management of non-print materials. It is past the time when this knowledge should be put to use in the creation of a true national library.

Because of the limitations of the National Library the Canadian Non-Print Project has no way of knowing that it has made its selections from the total range of Canadian materials; National Film Board will never know if it has achieved a truly comprehensive union holding file; UTLAS will have in its data base only items acquired by its members and other national libraries; librarians will never have access to a *Non-Print in Print* and, ultimately, because there is not a true national library the users of materials and the nation are the poorer.

Nothing less than a national effort can rationalize the creation, production, management and use of Canadian non-print materials.

REFERENCES

1 Rothwell, Helene de F., comp. *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980.

2 Frank Karas, draft of a review of *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips* written for *Emergency Librarian.*

3 Wilkinson, John P. Preface to *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips,* p. viii.

4 The curriculum laboratory of the Calgary Board of Education contains evaluated, selected materials which support and enhance the various Alberta curricula. It is designed to assist teachers and teacher librarians in program planning and budgeting. It is not a retrospective collection.

5 Wilkinson, p. viii.

6 M. Hillman, Special Assistant to the National Librarian, to Lorelei Rogers, Ottawa, April 8, 1981.

7 Canada. National Film Board. *A Plan For An Introduction/Distribution System For Canadian Audiovisual Products.* October, 1977.

8 Ibid., p. 1.

9 Canada. National Film Board. Distribution Branch. *Proposed Course of Action to Implement An Information/Distribution System For Canadian Audio-Visual Products.* By Colin Neale. November 25, 1977, p. 2.

10 Mary Dykstra, Associate Professor, School of Library Service, Dalhousie University to Anne Piternick, March 13, 1981.

11 Gardhouse, Judy. "NFB develops delivery service for Canadian non-print media." *Canadian Library Journal* 37 (April 1980):73.

12 University of Toronto Library Automation Systems. UTLAS *A Profile.* January, 1981, p. 4.

13 Fowke, Edith Fulton. *A Bibliography of Canadian Folklore in English.* Downsview: York University, 1976.

14 Modolo, Les. "Report on Funding to EMPDAC (Educational Media Producers and Distributors Association of Canada) Members." November, 1980, p. 1.

15 Hillman.

16 1980 was not a typical year for the Calgary Board of Education. A lengthy teachers' strike meant that no evaluation or selection of materials was done between May 27 and September 27, 1980.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

BROWN, JAMES W., *Nonprint Media Information Networking: Status and Potentials.* ERIC Clearinghouse, 1976.

CANADA. Department of Secretary of State. *Big World Small Format: A Study of the Use and Distribution of 16mm Film, Tape and A-V Materials.* 1976.

CANADA. National Film Board. *A Plan For an Information/Distribution System For Canadian Audio-visual Products.* October 1977.

CANADA. National Film Board. Distribution Branch. *Proposed Course of Action to Implement an Information/Distribution System For Canadian Audio-Visual Products,* by Colin Neale. November 25, 1977.

FOWKE, EDITH FULTON. *A Bibliography of Canadian Folklore in English.* Downsview: York University, 1976.

GARDHOUSE, JUDY. "NFB develops delivery service for Canadian non-print media." *Canadian Library Journal* 37 (April 1980): 73-76.

National Conference on the State of Canadian Bibliography. Proceedings. Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1977.

The Professional Librarian's Reader in Library Automation and Technology. White Plains, New York: Knowledge Industry Publications, Inc., 1980.

ROTHWELL, HELEN DE F., comp. *Canadian Selection: Filmstrips.* Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1980.

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY AUTOMATION SYSTEMS. *UTLAS: A Profile.* January 1981.

WEIHS, JEAN; LEWIS, SHIRLEY; MACDONALD, JANET. *Nonbook Materials: The Organization of Integrated Collections.* Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, 1979.

III

DEVELOPMENTS IN AUTOMATED INFORMATION SYSTEMS ON A NATION-WIDE SCALE

DEVELOPMENTS TOWARDS AN AUTOMATED BIBLIOGRAPHIC NETWORK: CONCEPT, TECHNOLOGY, STANDARDIZATION, COORDINATION AND COOPERATION

BASIL STUART-STUBBS
University Librarian
University of British Columbia, Main Library - Administration
1956 Main Mall, Vancouver, B.C., Canada V6T 1Y3

AN AUTOMATED BIBLIOGRAPHIC NETWORK - THE DREAM

IF WORDS themselves could speak, surely "network" would cry out at being used so hard. It is one of those poor, tired words that has reached the point of collapse, it carries such a burden of meanings. Among librarians who devote meetings, papers and books to it, much like ancient theologians discoursing on the nature of God, it is a favourite word. And here beginneth yet another such discourse. I thought I might find some help by returning to that usually reliable source, Dr. Johnson, who defines a network as "Anything reticulated or decussated, at equal distances, with interstices between the intersections."[1] This only served to show that this great and droll man was capable of the occasional dull and pedantic definition. After wading through a swamp of other definitions, I concluded that I would not begin this paper with a definition of an automated bibliographic network, but instead would describe what you might expect such a network to do for you.

If you've been reading the popular press you already know what this network, in its fullest development, will be like. There you'll be, snug in your den at home with your compact, cuddly terminal. As someone engaged in Canadian Studies you might be wondering if any of Papineau's writings were published in English during the nineteenth century, or where you might find any of Atwood's books reviewed in journals published outside of Canada. A little fiddling with the keyboard and glowing letters are splattered across the screen. You hit a key and, to the accompaniment of a soft rippling sound, the terminal ejects some printed lists. Hey presto, an instant bibliography! What's more, locations have been provided for most of the items on the list. Returning to the keyboard, you order several of them to be sent to your office. You have just saved yourself about a day's work in the library, which means that you can go fishing.

In general, that's what we hope that an automated bibliographic network will allow us to do, eventually. It will provide access, on-line, to many very large machine-readable files or data bases. These files will contain descriptions of printed items, descriptions of the contents of printed items, and perhaps even the contents themselves. We will be able to search for information in many ways and in combinations never before possible. Amazingly, or straggling, toward exactly this kind of situation. But there is a long, winding, rugged and uphill road ahead. My purpose today is to tell you how far we have yet to go.

NETWORK COMPONENTS

If you'll imagine yourself back in your den for a moment, I think you'll find it easy to visualize what the components of this grand automated bibliographic network must be.

First, there's the terminal. Some wires emerge from the terminal and disappear into the wall; they obviously don't end there, so there must be a communications system, one that must link your terminal to a distant computer, or perhaps to computers in several locations. The computers must be operating according to some sets of instructions, so-called software, to distinguish it from the hardware represented by your terminal and the computer itself. The software is directing the computer to search out and organize information, so there must be a data base or bases. If there are data bases, someone, somewhere must have entered that data, probably by laborious keyboarding. Finally, that unfortunate drudge at the keyboard was probably not the person who assembled the information for the data base in the first place. There must be another unfortunate drudge, called a bibliographer.

You will note immediately, although this is a simplified description of a network, that there are many players on the stage. But are they all reading the same script? Let's investigate this question by starting with the creator of the data base, and working our way back component by component to you and your home terminal.

THE BIBLIOGRAPHER

We do not know when man first invented the wheel, but it was a long time ago. When the day came that he connected two wheels with an axle, he discovered the principle of standardization. Certain advantages accrue to those who can cause parts to fit and work together by making them identical. This principle may now be lost to the automotive industry, but it is well understood by bibliographers, and particularly those charged with the responsibility for compiling national bibliographies. It was they who gathered in Paris in 1961 to enunciate a set of principles aimed at establishing some kind of international consistency in the way librarians choose to describe bibliographic items.[2] If such consistency could exist, they reasoned, each item would only have to be described once, and the description then could be circulated internationally, for use by all. This concept gave rise to the dream of U.B.C., which everywhere except in my own province stands for "Universal Bibliographic Control", a world-wide programme calling for each nation to assume responsibility for describing bibliographic items appearing in its own country, and to make these descriptions available in a published national bibliography. In the intervening twenty years there have been notable improvements in the standards and availability of national bibliographies. Given the staggering numbers of new publications that have appeared in this time period, the national libraries have done astoundingly well. We have also seen the advent of such useful adjuncts to publications as the numerical identifiers known as the International Standard Book Number and the International Standard Serials

Number. So that bibliographic descriptions would be based on identical principles among at least some major countries, an International Standard Bibliographic Description, or ISBD, was devised. New and comprehensive catalogue rules incorporating the ISBD were laid down in successive versions of the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR).[3,4] All of these developments were aimed at creating the high level of standardization needed for the exchange of information, particularly within the kind of network we are discussing. And on the surface of it, all would appear to be well.

Were it only so. The fact is, the way in which AACR 1 was applied by some national libraries, and the way in which AACR 2 has been received and implemented . . . for there are differences between the two that have resulted in some disjunctions between older and newer catalogue records . . . have led away from the ideal of international consistency, or even intranational consistency. There is no time for me to tell the whole story here, or debate the merits of one code or another. The literature on this subject is now as abundant and as heated as that, concerning say, Watergate or women's liberation. Suffice it to say that the perfect uniformity envisioned by those who drafted the "Paris principles" has eluded us, though we still press on, and the day may arrive when all bibliographic descriptions of items will conform to the same rules, no matter where a cataloguer picks up an item. Take note, though, that I have been speaking only about items, and not their contents.

The contents of items are something else again. Traditionally, libraries, including national libraries, have concentrated their efforts on describing books, periodical titles and other individual published pieces such as maps, recordings and films. They have not usually concerned themselves with describing what is in those items. The business of creating periodical and newspaper indexes, and other such specialized analytical tools, has been left to scholarly and professional organizations and to private enterprise. Again, in the past twenty years, we have been treated to a proliferation of new works of this type, from many sources, and so numerous that reference librarians are hard put to be familiar with all of them, and libraries are equally hard put to buy all of them. What is significant for our purposes today is that there has been virtually no attempt to arrive at universal principles for the compilation of such indexes. Each one being to an extent an entrepreneurial creation, they differ vastly in the way they are assembled and organized.

Once the bibliographer has described the item in hand, or its contents, there is the necessity of adding further indexing information, by supplying the name of the author or authors and the subject or subjects covered by the text. Once again, the need for standardization is apparent, as it must become apparent to anyone who attempts to develop an index for anything. So we encounter the need for authority files or thesauri, by which we mean approved lists of descriptive words, usually nouns, with cross-references leading to these words from other words of the same or related meanings. The desirability of one such master list that could be used everywhere is obvious.

I'm sorry to report that it does not exist, although a fair degree of uniformity has been achieved in the lists developed by national libraries. What happens in periodical indexes is something else again. In short, anyone engaged in research and using a variety of printed bibliographic tools needs some imagination to overcome differences among authority files.

MACHINE-READABLE BIBLIOGRAPHIC DATA

All of the foregoing may seem far removed from the marvelous electronic automated bibliographic network, but it is on millions of ordinary bibliographic descriptions that the network will be based. The point is, we are not starting to construct the network with a standard product. Nevertheless, let us proceed to the next step that will lead back to you and your cuddly terminal: the conversion of the bibliographer's work to a form that the computer can handle.

Human beings may be troubled by inconsistency, but they can tolerate it. Computers can't. As anyone who has had the least experience with computers knows, a single comma out of place and the machine throws a fit. Thus when it comes to recording information in machine-readable form standards are necessary and obligatory, not just one standard, but several. And add to that absolute accuracy in the transcription of data.

The Machine-Readable Cataloguing or MARC format breaks down the bibliographical description into its component parts, attaches numbers to the parts and specifies the order in which they should be recorded. Other standards, blessed by such organizations as the International Organization for Standardization in Geneva, decree how these descriptions will appear to the computer when it attempts to read the magnetic tape. In effect, the computer must be deceived into thinking that it is reading numbers, not letters, and the deception must be flawlessly consistent. If standards for these things existed, all would be well except that, for reasons best known to themselves, nations have not been able to concoct and adopt a single international standard. For example, Canada had to devise its own version of the MARC format to accommodate two official languages in one bibliographic description.[5]

This meant that direct exchange of machine-readable bibliographic descriptions between countries was not possible. Each country was thus obliged to write sets of conversion programmes, adjusting the MARC format of one country to its own. The light on this horizon is something called UNIMARC, a standard into which all national formats will fit. It will be the responsibility of each nation to convert its records to UNIMARC for purposes of international distribution. Thereafter a nation will need only two conversion programmes: from UNIMARC to its own national MARC, and vice versa.

The national libraries in most Western nations have been producing MARC records for well over a decade, which means that there is already a massive amount of information about the publications of the sixties, seventies and eighties in machine-readable form. There is also a massive amount of information about the contents of publications in machine-readable form, but here again there is a difference. There are no commonly accepted national or international standards for the recording of the contents of items. In other words, the machine-readable versions of familiar periodical and newspaper indexes are all different from one another, and each one is virtually *sui generis*. And no one is about to go back in time to straighten this out.

MACHINE-READABLE BIBLIOGRAPHIC DATA BASES

Now we come to the next component, the data bases themselves, particularly those containing bibliographic records relating to Canadian Studies. No one issues licenses to the people who create data bases: anyone with access to a computer can do it. We know quite a bit about those data bases that are the work of libraries, governments, associations and corporations. We don't know very much about data bases created by individuals, and the privacy the computer affords doesn't allow us to find out much unless their creators volunteer information, or unless the data bases are issued in printed form at some time. Many researchers maintain unique files, and many of them may be relevant to Canadian studies.

Fortunately, we now have available to us a few directories listing data bases containing information pertaining to Canada.[6,7,8] Of course, this doesn't mean that these data bases were all compiled in Canada: many large and important subject data bases created in the U.S. and elsewhere contain information pertaining to Canada. At this point there may be as many as two hundred data bases of significance to Canadian studies in all disciplines, containing hundreds of thousands of bibliographic records. These data bases follow the pattern I have already delineated. There are data bases describing bibliographic items, the most important of which for Canadian purposes are CANMARC and FMQ, based respectively on the printed bibliographies *Canadiana* and *Bibliographie du Québec* produced by the National Library of Canada and the Bibliothèque National du Québec. The National Library also undertakes the translation into CANMARC format of similar national data tapes from other countries, and these too will contain references relating to Canada.

As opposed to these tapes of items, there are tapes containing bibliographic descriptions of the contents of items, or citation tapes, and these are principally the work of companies, organizations, institutes and governments. Again, many of these data tapes are based on and grow out of printed indexes and abstracts, but not all do, and there is an increasing probability that these machine-readable versions will supersede printed versions, virtually forcing the researcher on-line.

I should also note that there is a third kind of data base, although not bibliographic. These are the numerical and statistical bases, containing such things as census data. These too may be available through the same automated bibliographic network. And they are becoming so numerous, particularly on the scientific side, that the Canada Institute for Scientific and Technical Information has established a separate unit to keep track of them.

In general, it can be said that there is already a substantial amount of information pertinent to Canadian studies in machine-readable form. There are in existence just a few printed directories to tell us about these data bases, and not all of these directories are commercially available or widely held in libraries. In common with other printed directories, such as the phone book, they are out of data the day they are published. Moreover, no standard method of describing data bases is in use, although such standards have been provided in AACR2 and can be accommodated by the MARC format. What will be needed by the future automated bibliographic network is a data base of data bases, indexed by name, subject and other terms, providing a description of contents; the entries in the data base themselves will need to be under constant revision. Otherwise you won't know where to begin when you flip the switch on your home terminal.

THE SOFTWARE

Knowing what exists is one thing; having access to it is another. In our imaginary scenario, you and your terminal are still at one end, and data bases are still at the other. To bring the two of you together calls for computer software, operating computer hardware.

To create and provide this software new kinds of organizations have come into existence, mostly within the last dozen years. And the division between items and contents of items has persisted into the structuring of these organizations and their services. At present we have one type of organization, devoted mainly to assisting libraries in compiling their own catalogues, based on MARC records created by national libraries, and contributed by the organization's own customers; such organizations have come to be called "utilities." Another type of organization specializes in collecting and providing access to data tapes containing information about the contents of items: these are commonly referred to as "distributors" or "brokers."

Curiously, the national libraries that devised the MARC formats and created MARC tapes based on national bibliographies were not the first organizations to exploit the utmost potential of these records. When these tapes were first made available, many libraries acquired them for almost experimental purposes, writing software packages so that they could be used to produce local catalogues, mainly in the traditional card format. Not much thought was given to their potential use for information retrieval purposes. The software developed by the utilities was directed toward the same end, focussing on retrieval by such identifiers as the ISBN, the Library of Congress number, the author's name, or the title. Not all utilities can offer searches by subject or classification number.

As for the utilities themselves, the major ones in existence today were developed with public and foundation funds in association with academic institutions, but they have gradually evolved to become quasi-independent, quasi-corporate and in some cases profit-making and profit-motivated organizations. Originally dedicated to the cooperative use of bibliographic records for the purpose of creating individual library catalogues, they are increasingly involved in the provision of union catalogue services and automated support for other library functions such as acquisitions, serials control and circulation. Three major utilities have attracted the majority of library customers for these kinds of services, two of the utilities being in the

U.S., and one in Canada – namely, the University of Toronto Library Automation Systems, or UTLAS. Among them they account for more than two thousand library customers and they support many more terminals than that. The giant among them, the Ohio College Library Center, or OCLC (now the Online Computer Library Center), is the oldest, having been established just ten years ago, and it has the major share of the market, nationally and internationally.

There are other smaller utilities, and others in the making; undoubtedly some of these will grow larger, and some will be established by the public sector and some by the private sector. For libraries that prefer not to be associated with a large utility, the proliferation of low-cost mini-computers makes it possible for them to use local software packages that support most library functions quite efficiently. This only complicates the future of any integrated automated bibliographic network. It's not as though such a network could be planned once and for all on the basis of a set of existing utilities and individual library automated systems. The environment is volatile, fluctuating and to an extent competitive.

On the other hand, the brokers of information services had different origins and objectives. Although the U.S. National Library of Medicine was the first institution to establish a workable on-line information system, it was not long before the private sector saw a potential for reward. Two major brokers emerged in California in the sixties, both in association with existing corporations that already had computers, computer personnel and access to contract funds from such sources as the Atomic Energy Commission, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, and the U.S. military. These two brokers, Lockheed Information Systems and the Systems Development Corporation, do have outlets in Canada, the former in association with Micromedia and the latter with Infomart. In 1977 they were joined by a new, major and independent broker, Bibliographic Retrieval Services of Scotia, N.Y., which undercut the prices of its competitors. This is a pattern that may be repeated. While the private sector has dominated the field in the U.S., in Canada the public sector, in the shape of the National Science Library, now the Canada Institute for Scientific and Technical Information, began to supply off-line services from data tapes as early as 1969. Since then it has increased its menu of data bases, and provides both on-line and off-line services. For the social sciences and humanities, the National Library of Canada offers parallel services, using CISTI in effect as its contractor. To complete the scene, it must be mentioned that there are smaller but highly important private sector brokers of Canadian origin and specializing in Canadian data bases, such as QL Systems in Toronto, and Informatech France-Québec in Montreal.

Considering that all of these brokers offer their services in Canada, and despite the fact that there is some overlap in the lists of data bases to which they provide access, our country enjoys a degree of access to machine-readable bibliographic information that must be unparalleled anywhere else in the world. However, this abundance and variety has its disadvantages: every one of these systems, whether operated by a utility or a broker, uses unique software, which means from the point of view of the user a host of different command languages and search strategies, all in a state of flux. In short, there is no standardization, and the complications arising out of this have to be added to all those other quirks I have mentioned so far. It should also be noted that the climate in which these vendors of services operate is competitive, not cooperative, and is thus not conducive to rationalization except insofar as this can be perceived by the vendors as beneficial to them individually.

THE HARDWARE

The services provided by the utilities and brokers are based on software, and the software is obviously needed to drive hardware. An automated bibliographic network requires all the standard components of a conventional computer system: devices for inputting information, a central processing unit, a memory unit, and devices for delivering output. For all of these items there are scores of manufacturers, big and small. The rate of change in the design of these components is rapid, and model number succeeds model number as manufacturers vie with one another for a share of the market. The trend is ever toward faster processing speeds, larger memories, and more sophisticated features, all in smaller packages at lower prices. In this area the free enterprise environment has indeed succeeded in delivering an extraordinary range of choice for customers. But it has done it so quickly that it is often remarked that software development lags far behind, the tortoise to the computer hare. This is particularly the case where very large and complex software packages are concerned, such as those employed by the utilities. Since the acquisition of new hardware requires the rewriting of old software, the exploitation of the most advanced hardware involves a utility or broker in a heavy and labour-intensive investment in reprogramming. This explains why the major utilities use computers that were designed in the sixties, some of which are no longer manufactured, are ageing and increasingly difficult to maintain. Further, components of these systems are interrelated. It is not easy directly to connect an IBM terminal to a Honeywell computer, for example. In fact, all of the utilities mandate the type of terminal that must be used to gain access to their files.

That hypothetical cuddly terminal of yours also falls into the category of hardware. If you have experience of such things, you'll concede that we are not yet at the point where terminals are such self-evident pieces of equipment that any novice can manage to deal with them, in the way that a child can usually peck out a sentence on a typewriter. Most people have trouble using mechanical vending machines, and even simple specially-designed terminals such as those used by the banks pose problems for users. It may be some time before we see the all-purpose home terminal, containing within its circuits instruction packages that will lead the user step by step through the correct routines; and it may be some time before this terminal can be joined to any computer, anywhere.

To summarize, the hardware aspect of the network is in a dynamic state of change, with an enormous variety of old and new equipment in the marketplace and in use, much of it incapable of interconnection. And despite the rich selection of items now available to us, there is still room for the design of terminals that are adapted to the needs of the unsophisticated.

COMMUNICATIONS

In tracing our path from the creator of the machine-readable bibliographic file back to you and your home terminal, we come to the final element, the communications system. It will come as a relief to you to know that it exists and that it works, most of the time, for most purposes. It might destroy your composure to know that in Canada there are sixteen private or government telephone corporations, serving about 98% of the population. The other 2% is serviced by nine hundred and twenty-one other systems. What makes it possible for you to direct dial between cities is a multiplicity of financial and technical agreements worked out over time by the corporations within their own cooperative organization, the Trans Canada Telephone System. As the collective proprietors of the major land-line digital communications systems, they must be involved in the automated bibliographic network. But they aren't alone in the field: their competition is CN/CP Telecommunications, which also offers digital communications services.[9]

And there are more players in the wings. There are the cable companies, in the business of delivering video and audio signals within limited geographic areas. And there's TELESAT CANADA, the corporation jointly owned by the federal government and the telephone companies, which has the sole authority to own and operate Canadian communication satellites. Relationships among all these groups are complex and not always harmonious, which is why the Canadian Radio-television and Telecommunications Commission, CRTC, exists as a federal regulatory body, attempting to ensure that the public interest is served. Waiting to jump into the act is the new Canada Post Corporation which will have an enhanced role, thanks to Bill C-42, which was passed by the House of Commons on April 4th, 1981.

It's also well to remember that the situation south of the border is every bit as complex, with many interests attempting to take advantage of new developments in communications technology, and to consolidate their positions not just in communications, but in everything possibly related to communications. Thus we see the phenomenon of the multi-national conglomerate owning publishers, radio and television networks, computer firms, as well as the means of communication. These concentrations of power are intimidating in what is said to be the age of information. Yet our own automated bibliographic systems must be linked to those in the U.S. in some way, and to those in other countries. The automated bibliographic network will ultimately be international, not national.

AN AUTOMATED BIBLIOGRAPHIC NETWORK - THE REALITY

In reviewing for you the present state of development of the several components that must function together to create an automated bibliographic network, I have depicted a near-chaotic scene with scores of characters and many scripts. The nationwide network has often been visualized as a thoroughly integrated system, operating on the basis of one set of standards, using one language, one kind of equipment. Certainly such a network is a theoretical and technical possibility, and it has the appeal of uniformity, consistency and finality, all ideals attractive to librarians and systems planners.

However, it is clear that developments in library and information systems in the last two decades have gone in an opposite direction, for a number of reasons.

First, there is as yet, to my knowledge, no central authority with the explicit mandate to devise and impose a network plan and to require absolute conformity to standards of all kinds in all sectors, not in Canada, not in the U.S., not in the U.K., France or anywhere, nationally or internationally.

Second, the field of bibliographic information, its creation and automation, is simply too vast for anyone to comprehend, let alone control.

Third, the field is too dynamic, too subject to rapid change, for any single agency or individual to stay abreast of all developments.

Fourth, there is that inextinguishable human penchant for going one's own way. Something in our natures compels us to stamp our individuality on anything that smacks of excessive uniformity. I really do believe this is instinctive behavior, and that it manifests itself in everything we do, including networking. All of this must strike you as bad news, if you were hoping to have that cuddly terminal as a Christmas present. But I do have some good news.

Despite everything, and against formidable odds, an automated bibliographic network already exists. While we sit around in conferences fretting about it, it's right there, growing and changing every day. There's hardly a major research library that isn't connected to it. Admittedly it is not well-articulated, consistent and logical, but we are using it to the advantage of our patrons. It isn't something that can be extended into your living room, but by degrees and in a piecemeal way, I believe that it will get there.

Let's examine briefly how we are dealing with its present shortcomings. There are several utilities, and several brokers, all using different hardware and software, offering differing services. It would be nice if we could connect to all of them with one terminal, but we can't. So we adjust by using several kinds of terminals, as required. At this point, the extra cost of those terminals to everyone might be less than the cost of making a single system out of our hodge-podge.

In the absence of a single command language, we have to use several. so we have shelves of manuals telling us how to deal with each utility, each broker and each data base. It means that library staff members have to be trained and constantly learning. It also means that library patrons cannot have immediate personal access to on-line systems. There may be rare exceptions among library patrons who have learned to use a system or two, but I have yet to meet one who is as well informed about these systems as are some librarians.

There is no one communications system linking us to all utilities and brokers. Therefore we use several, any one that we need to get to a particular file in a particular place.

There's another piece of good news: there is an approach to this complexity and redundancy that could bring that terminal closer to your living room, and it is an approach now being pursued actively by many interested parties in Canada in the public and private sectors, with a common interest in terminal to computer and computer to computer communications. In essence, it involves developments within the communications links that will permit one brand of equipment to relate to another brand, and to make messages consistent and capable of interpretation throughout a network involving all kinds of data bases. The concept is referred to as Open Systems Interconnection, or OSI, since we must always refer to things by their initials these days, and fundamental to OSI is the development of a group of protocols for purposes of transmitting messages in a network. The word "protocol" may give you some difficulty. Dr. Johnson says that a protocol is "The original copy of any writing."[10] A contemporary and Canadian definition is: "Protocols are a set of communication conventions, including data formats and procedures which allow two or more network entities to communicate with each other."[11] Here's another definition, from the other side of the border: "A formal set of conventions governing the format and relative sequencing of message exchange."[12] These are all good English words, but I confess that I don't fully understand their meaning, not being expert in systems. I am led to believe that if these protocols can be designed and adopted, the communications network itself will be able to deal with messages from a variety of equipment and destined for a similar variety of equipment. Communications will flow smoothly even though the other components of the network are heterogeneous.

It is precisely to work on the developments of these protocols that the National Library of Canada has established a Task Group on Computer/Communications Protocols for Bibliographic Data Interchange. This group includes technical experts from the Department of Communications, Bell Canada, CNCP Telecommunications, the National Library, NRC, UTLAS, and many others with a stake in this area. I understand that its meetings have been fruitful.[13]

There is another body, a committee appointed by the National Library Advisory Board, with a more general interest in the development of the automated bibliographic network. This is the Bibliographic and Communications Network Committee, of which I am Chairman.

Its first meeting on May 12th and 13th was mostly devoted to a review of the mandate of the committee, and of the subjects with which it will be concerned. Perhaps the most interesting piece of news we heard was that Bell Canada is mounting a project to test the OSI concept. That is, Bell will set up a so-called value-added service communication system, linking about ten pre-selected user groups and about four hundred terminals. The communication system will be "intelligent," in the sense that it will receive a variety of signals from a variety of terminals and computers, and interpret them to one another. It's important to understand that this project is not being set up just for libraries or as a prototype of a bibliographic network. It is intended to handle the information requirements of virtually any common interest groups. In fact, it will probably be commercial users that will make it viable. It will also include an electronic mail component. If the project is successful, it may rescue us from the predicament in which we find ourselves, with our heterogenous disconnected network.

Through their work the two bodies established by the National Library will attempt to encourage the development of the bibliographic network that will put the terminal in your home, eventually. Please note that I said "encourage." As I mentioned before, at this time neither the committee, nor the Task Group, nor the National Library Advisory Board, nor the National Library, nor the Department of Communications has a clear, specific legal mandate or even a responsibility to create and establish an automated bibliographic network. But someone has to take the initiative in bringing together the many parties whose interaction and cooperation will be essential in defining goals, conceptualizing a network, considering options, and proposing specific courses of action; I think we should be relieved and grateful that the National Library of Canada is taking this initiative.

I confess that the way in which the automated bibliographic network is developing is not the one I would have foreseen a decade ago. And there was a time when, watching any possibility of a unified structure crumble in the face of diverse individual initiatives, I despaired. Now I share the view of Don Swanson, of the Graduate Library School at the University of Chicago, who sees the library and information networks in a state of almost natural, constant evolution and adaptation. I want to end with a quotation from his penetrating and thoughtful essay on *Evolution, Libraries and National Information Policy:*

> *. . . it is futile to try to impose overall goals, or to draw exact blueprints, for systems whose components are people and institutions in pursuit of their own goals and interests. Though no one is seriously proposing to turn all libraries and information services in the country into a gigantic piece of clockwork, there are some who seem to believe that this would be a good idea if only we knew how to carry it out, and they reason therefore that at least we should try. All of my arguments here are directed against such a notion. In contrast to clockwork, systems that are left alone to evolve are neither designed nor managed . . . Successful trial-and-error mechanisms in a large pluralistic system operate at the level of small, numerous individual components within the system; only a single component is eliminated with each failure. By contrast, a very large, monolithic or clockwork system, if it fails, dies on a very large scale. . . . The larger and more complex the system, the more calamitous the failure. So the trick is to design complex systems such that only small units die rather than the whole system whenever a failure occurs . . .*[13]

Thus it seems that what at first appeared to be a disadvantage, the fragmentation, complexity and disorder of our present situation, may prove to be a great strength of the automated bibliographic network, as it evolves. I'm not quite so *laissez-faire* as Dr. Swanson, and am inclined to think that by staying in touch with one another all the parties to the network can avoid disastrous mistakes and may be able to help one another by sharing a general conception of what the network is, can do and can become. But I do agree with him that a network so generally conceived must allow for variations of all kinds, and it appears that the Open Systems Interconnection plan will allow for this. You may yet have your cuddly terminal, and as you use it you will be blissfully unaware of the tangle that lies down those wires. But then, did you ever really understand how your television works?

REFERENCES

1 Johnson, Samuel. *A Dictionary of the English Language* . . . 5th ed. 2 vols. London: W. & A. Strahan, 1784.

2 International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, 1961. *Report.* Edited by A.H. Chaplin and Dorothy Anderson. London, 1963. 293p.

3 American Library Association et al. *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules.* Chicago: American Library Association, 1970. 409p.

4 American Library Association et al. *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules.* 2nd ed. Chicago: American Library Association, 1978. 620p.

5 National Library of Canada. MARC Task Group. *Canadian MARC: a Report of the Activities of the MARC Task Group Resulting in a Recommended Canadian MARC Format for Monographs and a Canadian MARC Format for Serials* . . . Ottawa, 1972. 242p.

6 Campbell, Henry C. *The Espial Data Base Directory: a Guide to Current Canadian Information Contained in National and International Data Banks.* Toronto: Espial Productions, 1979. 28p.

7 Deutsch, Maurice. *Online Databases.* Burnaby: Simon Fraser University Library, 1980. 161p.

8 Alberta Information Retrieval Association. *COIN Directory of Computerized Information in Canada.* 1st ed. Edmonton: Information Systems, Alberta Research Council, 1980.

9 Hinley, M. Patricia; Martin, Gail, M.; and McNulty, Jean. *The Tangled Net: Basic Issues in Canadian Communications.* Foreword by George Woodcock. Vancouver: J.J. Douglas, 1977, pp. 120-135.

10 Johnson. *A Dictionary of the English Language* . . .

11 Buchinski, Edwin J.; and Islam, Mazharul. *The Context of Interconnection for a Nation-Wide Bibliographic Network.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1980, p. 27.

12 National Commission on Libraries and Information Science. *A Computer Network Protocol for Library and Information Science Applications.* Washington: NCLIS/NBS Task Force on Computer Network Protocols, 1977, p. 66.

13 *National Library News* 13 (Jan./Feb. 1982):2.

14 Swanson, Don. "Evolution, Libraries and National Information Policy." In *Networks for Networkers: Critical Issues in Cooperative Library Development.* Edited by Barbara Evans Markuson and Blanche Wools. New York: Neal-Schuman, 1980, p. 89.

BIBLIOGRAPHIC AND NON-BIBLIOGRAPHIC DATA BASES IN CANADA

SUE BISHOP
Acting Chief
Computer-Based Reference Service, National Library of Canada
395 Wellington Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4

THIS REPORT is an assessment at a very practical level of bibliographic and non-bibliographic data bases available for public online enquiry in Canada. This is a subject which is becoming increasingly important for Canadian librarians and for the researchers whom we meet each day as clients. My comments are based on experiences, both successful and frustrating, of trying to meet their information needs with the online information services currently available in Canada.

To ensure that we are all speaking more or less the same language, I will begin by defining some terms and identifying some of the components of the online information business. My definitions are based on the *Directory of online data bases*[1] published by Cuadra Associates. A data base is a computer-readable collection of data, which may consist of textual or numeric information. Of greatest interest to us here today are the reference data bases which refer us to a person, an institution, or a document for the information we require. The file may be categorized as bibliographic, containing information about a set of documents, or referral, such as a directory or list of current research projects. Another large group of files are referred to as source data bases; these contain information which answers questions directly. If, for example, you wish to know how much wheat was grown in Quebec last year, you might do a search on a bibliographic data base to find recent articles about wheat and Quebec; when you had been able to identify, locate and obtain the documents, you would hope that the information would be there. On the other hand, if you were able to search a source data base, the answer could be there immediately. Because of the work involved in obtaining and maintaining up-to-date numeric files and making available computational programs, these data bases tend to be quite expensive to search, usually requiring a subscription-type fee in addition to usage charges. One interesting variant within the source data base category is the full text file in which every word of an original document is input for online access and available for displaying the results of a query. My attention today will be primarily on reference and full test data bases available in Canada through public access online systems.

The information industry is changing rapidly as big business wakes up to the fact that money can be made in this expanding market. In this time of unprecedented numbers of mergers and acquisitions throughout the world, the roles of all the participants involved in the industry can be blurred, but the basic functions remain: the information provider, the information distributor, and the information broker.

The production of a data base, or more commonly of information services including an online data base, is the responsibility of the abstracting/indexing service which may be a government agency, a non-profit organization, or a private business. The data base producer, regardless of the sector within which it operates, scans the literature of the specific subject area or range of documents which the file will cover, selects items for inclusion according to established criteria, creates records of bibliographical information such as author, title, and source, and may add index terms and abstracts. Construction and maintenance of a controlled vocabulary, monitoring of new publications in the field, preparing documentation and user aids, and providing training are further activities of the producer.

Once the data base is in machine-readable form, the online distributor or online system vendor will make the file available to the public for online enquiry. The online system operates like a supermarket, storing and making available the range of products which are data bases. Some of the Canadian online distributors are QL Systems, Informatech and the Canada Institute for Scientific and Technical Information (CISTI). To simplify searching for all users of a system, the vendor usually tries to standardize data elements across files as much as possible, using the same conventions to search author, date or language, whenever possible. The online vendor also prepares documentation and user aids, and offers training and assistance for online searchers.

The third agent in the process is the online searcher. Usually this function is the responsibility of a librarian or information specialist, who is part of a library service or is an independent information broker. Researchers who rely heavily on one particular data base may perform some or all of their own online searching, but when faced with the proliferation of online files and systems as well as the frequent need to search several different files to cover a cross-disciplinary subject, most people prefer to have an experienced searcher do their work for them.

There are other participants in and dimensions to automated information retrieval: telecommunication agencies, such as DATAPAC and Teleglobe; equipment manufacturers and agents; new technologies such as videotex and videodisc; all these factors will affect the kind, quantity, and quality of information available to us.

Using the network of data base producers, system vendors, telecommunications and search specialists, what kind of online information does one find in Canada? Through Canadian and American systems, we have access to files produced in Britain, France, the Netherlands, South Africa, Switzerland, Italy and Austria, as well as Canada and the United States. Within the bibliographic data bases, we will find citations primarily to journal literature, as well as reports, monographs, and conference proceedings. Much of what is available is research- or academically-oriented, although there is some access to popular materials as well. Data bases covering science, technology, medicine, the social sciences and the humanities reflect the world's literature; hence references to non-English language material form a significant part of these files. Some of the files contain information dating from the middle of the 1960's, while others begin only in the last three or four years.

What kind of information is used in Canada? Patterns of data base use vary according to the institution or clientele for which searching is being done. A recent article by Stephen Lawton[2] concerning automation in libraries in post-secondary institutions, suggests that the most popular data bases in the libraries responding to his survey were ERIC and MEDLINE. Other frequently searched files were BIOSIS, PSYCH ABSTRACTS, CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS and SOCIAL SCISEARCH. These files are all produced in the United States. Another study, by Gilles Deschatelets,[3] which included a broad spectrum of online search services in Canada, indicated that COMPENDEX (Engineering Index), CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS and NTIS (National Technical Information Service) were reported to be the most frequently used data bases.

To illustrate some of the strengths and weaknesses of the Canadian material available, I would like to describe some typical online inquiries which I have received. A client may request, for example, information on education of northern native people. To find Canadian monographs, the CAN/MARC file will be a useful starting point; some government reports and theses can also be found there. To find research reports and some names of persons working in the field, the NRIS file, produced by the Department of Indian and Northern Affairs, should be searched. In order to find as many Canadian theses as possible, one should also search COMPREHENSIVE DISSERTATIONS ABSTRACTS, an American file. Periodical literature related to the north can be found in BOREAL NORTHERN TITLES. However, to cover the educational literature, it would be necessary to search in ERIC, another file produced in the United States. And to find Canadian citations in ERIC, as it is loaded on the DIALOG system, it is necessary to enter some twenty-seven terms; the term "CANADA" when searched without qualifications will retrieve over five thousand items, but using provincial names and searching other fields, such as corporate affiliation, will increase recall to almost nine thousand references. Some data bases such as ERIC and NTIS have added data elements to indicate country of origin, but this feature is not available for the whole time period covered by the file. Other files will add geographic terms as descriptors or identifiers where titles do not indicate clearly the country concerned. Here practice and conventions vary so widely that a thorough study of the data bases is needed to extract the maximum Canadian content.

Another requester might ask for periodical articles covering Canadian involvement in the Spanish Civil War. The data bases of greatest use to him would be AMERICA: HISTORY AND LIFE and HISTORICAL ABSTRACTS which come from Santa Barbara, California. A graduate student needing critical references to Duncan Campbell Scott found a dozen or fewer references in the CAN/MARC file, including some theses; sixteen further references were found in the MLA BIBLIOGRAPHY produced by the Modern Language Association in New York. In both cases the researchers were pleased by the results but realized that the output represented only a beginning of their bibliographical research. There is much currently published for which the access is at best limited.

An experienced searcher can manipulate the information contained in the data base fields to extract the Canadian content that is there. One of the most useful data elements is author affiliation. This information creates an online address directory and permits the combination of subject terms and address locations to answer enquiries such as, "Who in Canada is writing on inflation?" or "Find me some Canadian doctoral dissertations on China." Here again the conventions vary among the data bases available and among the online system used. If you know the names of current key journals in your area of research, you may in many cases enter the journal titles as part of the strategy in order to include them for greater relevance or to exclude them if you scan them regularly. If you had been unable to find the latest issue of a journal, such as the *Revue d'histoire de l'amérique française,* it is possible to search online to retrieve the citations to all items in the last issue indexed. If you know of a classic paper in your field to which any reputable researcher must refer, it is possible to search for items which cite that work. For example, you may include Dr. Hans Selye as a cited author in a search about management of stress. With careful investigation of basic library research tools, as well as the user aids published by data base producers and systems vendors, it is possible to construct a search strategy to retrieve maximum Canadian output from files produced outside Canada.

By now you may feel that I have devoted enough attention to data bases produced elsewhere. What kind of access are we offered to Canadian publications by Canadian data bases? As I indicated earlier, there are at least sixty bibliographic, referral or full text data bases publicly available on major online systems in Canada. The number is not firm: any given month may see the addition of one or two new Canadian files available for public enquiry. In selecting an appropriate data base, a search specialist will want to consider the scope of each file: the subject or orientation and the type of publications selected for inclusion in the data base.

A number of Canadian data bases are subject specific, including all types of documents. The SPORT data base available on the ORBIT system gives access to a wide range of material on athletics, fitness, leisure and specific games as well as sports psychology and sports medicine. Because of concern about increased leisure time, personal health and preventive medicine, this popular Canadian data base is widely used outside Canada.

Another subject area where online information already exists is Canadian law. On QL Systems it is possible to search the REVISED STATUTES OF CANADA and those of several of the provinces, as well as case law files such as the ALL CANADA WEEKLY SUMMARIES which contain summaries of judgements in civil cases in federal and provincial supreme courts in Canada.

Business periodical literature can be found in CANADIAN BUSINESS INDEX available on ORBIT as well as QL Systems. Beginning in 1975, this file covers finance, taxation, computer sciences, and industrial relations as well as news about companies and new products. A different slant on business can be found in a Canadian file on co-operatives, primarily agricultural and financial, but including other types of ventures as well. The file, named COINS, is produced by Agriculture Canada and is searchable online as a sub-file of the AGRICOLA data base. Another specialized file is COMMUNICATIONS INFORMATION created by John Black of the University of Guelph. The particular scope of this set of citations is the social and political aspect of communication systems and technologies, making it one of the most selective data bases available.

Two subjects receiving much attention are the environment and energy. Various services within Environment Canada have created a data base named CANADIAN ENVIRONMENT covering report and journal literature related to Canadian environmental concerns, and its French-language equivalent, ENVIRONNEMENT; the cataloguing data base ELIAS; and an inventory of solid waste management projects in Canada. Energy, Mines and Resources has made available three files providing information about current energy research projects in Canada, current Canadian government energy-related programs, and an international calendar of conferences, seminars, and exhibitions about energy. These two subjects may be only of peripheral interest to Canadian studies, but I suggest that they represent a response to expressed public need and stand as examples of the kind of information that can be made available.

In contrast to its physical isolation, the Canadian north has become one of the most accessible areas in Canada, bibliographically speaking. I have already mentioned NRIS, a research data base; three additional files are BOREAL NORTHERN TITLES, ARCTIC SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY INFORMATION SYSTEM, and YUKON BIBLIOGRAPHY. All three contain references to scientific and technical literature but include much social science and humanities information as well, including such topics as language, education, art, history and public affairs.

Another recent addition to the group of publicly available regional data bases is CANPLAINS, produced by the Canadian Plains Research Center and available on QL Systems. Information concerning current research, past research and potential research as well as references to relevant publications including theses may be available. Here again the subject scope is very broad, encompassing a vast range of research conducted by faculty and students at universities in Manitoba, Saskatchewan, and Alberta.

Informatech makes available a group of data bases covering a number of subject areas especially relevant to Quebec but also of interest to other regions in Canada. RADAR provides access to periodical literature published in Quebec, BIBLIOCOM contains citations to French language material on all aspects of communications, and HISCABEQ offers references to Quebec and Canadian history. One can only regret that the files are not larger, for the information found there on any one topic is limited.

Many Canadian data bases can be most usefully categorized by the type of documentation covered by the file, such as monographs, government documents, or news items. Canadian monographs, theses and government publications, can be found in the CAN/MARC file, which corresponds to sections of the printed Canadiana, listing the cataloguing of Canadian materials by the National Library of Canada. The file may be searched by author, organization, title words, Library of Congress subject headings and classification, and Dewey Decimal classification.

Searching effectively on such a multi-disciplinary, general purpose data base can be difficult. A recent "quick and dirty" search for items on arts and culture in Canada produced a number of references to salmon and oysters – fish culture. A bilingual data base has its own peculiar hazards. I once prepared a search strategy to find material on the history of blacks in Canada. Having successfully eliminated Black Creek, blacksmiths, and black bears from the output, I hoped the citations would be uniformly relevant. When they arrived, I was momentarily at a loss to explain the five or six references to Russian literature courses until I realized that one of my terms, "s-l-a-v-e," was a term in French with quite a different meaning.

There are available a number of automated cataloguing data bases consisting of the records of an institution or a group of libraries. Although they can be used for subject searching, they are more often used for known item searches. In a similar category are locating tools, such as UNION, the *Union list of scientific serials held in Canadian libraries*, produced and made available online by the Canada Institute for Scientific and Technical Information. A similar file will be put up by the National Library covering the social sciences and the humanities. The CODOC file produced at the University of Guelph is useful for both location searching and verification, and includes government documents from pre-Confederation to the present. These data bases can be useful for interlibrary loan staff and for researchers wishing to consult materials on-site.

Three cataloguing files mounted on CAN/OLE provide public access to the cataloguing of three major government libraries: ELIAS, from Environment Canada, OOT, from the library of Transport Canada, and OON, the recent cataloguing of CISTI. These files do not cover complete holdings; rather they provide access to current publications (some produced within the agency or department itself) and reflect selection policies based on the mandates of the institution or the clientele they serve.

Newspapers constitute one of the most successful sectors of Canadian online services. An invaluable aid to tracking current issues, press releases, and business information is INFOGLOBE, the full text of the *Globe and Mail* from 1978; every word of every story is searchable and printable. This is one-stop shopping in the online business, for the information is complete in itself. The news of the current day is available, and any search you do will give you the most recent stories first. To find information about stories in other Canadian newspapers, two further news data bases are available: CANADIAN NEWS INDEX and QUEBEC-ACTUALITÉ which cover English and French-language newspapers respectively. Because they are indexes, rather than the full text, the updates are not immediate and search results can be embarassingly out of date: if, for example, you happened to be looking for items concerning Canada's prime minister a few months after the last federal election, you would still have found Mr. Clark in power.

At a time when researchers must compete for limited funds, there is an increasing need for up-to-date information concerning research in progress. Granting agencies must be able to determine the merit of an application with respect to related or similar projects. Applicants must be aware of the work of colleagues in their own field. Since many months may elapse between research and publication in a primary journal, the automated file of research in progress is a useful addition to the repertoire of Canadian data bases. Some of those presently available for public online searching are NRIS, CANPLAINS, ENERGY and IEC; the last file is produced by CISTI and contains information about federally funded research in Canadian universities. This year the National Library of Canada is supporting a test file of the SocScan data base, providing access to both research projects and publications of Canadian social scientists. This data has been collected from researchers by means of questionnaires, and the file will provide some degree of access to Canadian periodical literature in this field.

Up to this point, I have mentioned about thirty Canadian data bases mounted on public-access online systems; at least that many more remain unmentioned, but are, for the most part, similar or related files, such as the group of legal data bases on QL where similar information is available for the various provinces or courts. Beyond this number, there are yet more data bases which can be searched by the producers for requesters on demand. The ONTERIS files created and maintained by the Ontario Ministry of Education contain records to research documents about education produced in Ontario, material from the Ministry of Education and school boards, a small base of records produced by the Commission on Declining School Enrolments, and an online thesaurus of the controlled vocabulary used for the three files. Although a limited number of external users have online access, most researchers must currently request a search through the Information Centre staff. Another example of a file where hands-on access is limited but enquiries will be searched is the automated data base on teaching and learning in higher education, produced by the Office of Teaching and Learning Information Centre of the Council of Ontario Universities in co-operation with the University of Waterloo. Two other data bases which may be searched on demand by the producer are GEOSCAN of the Geological Survey of Canada and the ICURR file of the Intergovernmental Committee on Urban and Regional Research.

If you begin to list non-bibliographic data bases in Canada, the numbers grow dramatically. One can include BOSS, an inventory prepared by Industry, Trade and Commerce listing manufacturers and products; a data base created by the Department of Regional Economic Expansion containing statistics such as income, unemployment and education broken down to the constituency level, and ICAR, an inventory of agricultural research in Canada, maintained by Agriculture Canada. These are all government products, but as publishers of directories, encyclopedias and other reference works begin to use automation to produce print products, they will be creating searchable data bases of marketable value in themselves. This has already begun, and its widespread use is only a matter of time.

The number of publications made available in an electronic mode is growing almost daily. McGraw-Hill will make available thirty-one of its magazines, including *Business Week* and *Architectural Record*, through Mead Data Central, which already offers access to the *Washington Post, Newsweek, The Economist* and other magazines on its NEXIS system. Beginning in August, the *Harvard Business Review* will provide online access to all its articles from 1971 to date as well as significant older material. The International Paper Company plans to send its annual report via satellite video to some 60,000 shareholders. (Such a decision by a paper producer seems somehow to acquire a special significance. Is paper publishing on its way to becoming so expensive that even the producers will find it cheaper to publish electronically?) In Canada, there is an electronic publishing venture in Toronto which produces *The Report*, dealing with electronic communication; at this point the print subscribers may also have electronic access to the publication.

The office of the future exists today. Intelligent terminals and personal computers are found in offices throughout the country. Linked with your telephone, they already enable you to send electronic mail messages, search data bases, read electronic publications, receive, sort and manipulate data, and create your own files. (Designers of word processing equipment are working to create user-friendly machines which will respond to natural language or even voice commands.) Many of the applications of the new technology are aimed at business or home entertainment markets, but the volume of usage from these areas will bring equipment and time costs down a more affordable level, for all of us. Online access to restaurant guides, airline schedules and horoscope predictions have little direct relevance to Canadian studies - unless one is selecting a location for a conference or an auspicious day to submit a grant application proposal - but cheap computer time and easy availability of the necessary equipment will have their effect throughout the country. Other interesting developments including linking word processing equipment to typesetting machinery using telephone lines, laser printing systems, and reliable optical character recognition systems which eliminate manual keying-in of data. Videotex systems permit production and transmission of graphic images as well as alpha-numeric data, and videodiscs offer the possibility of large storage capacity for sound, image and textual material in a format which is expensive to produce in the first place but cheaply reproduced and distributed.

Those of us who are concerned with data base production will have to become electronically literate in order to make the most effective use of the new technology. The options of equipment and software can be bewildering; in fact, there is available a new data base devoted entirely to pricing of computer hardware, software and services. And even those who can not now afford to buy into electronic information distribution services, should be sufficiently aware of the possibilities and limits of information systems to plan for eventual conversion. I have recently seen a very sad object lesson in how not to produce an automated file. A set of potentially useful data had been compiled, a set of subject headings with codes devised and applied, with the resulting coded information stored in a minicomputer. The producers then wanted to make the file available for public use. Unfortunately, their descriptors were not easily understood by someone not familiar with the subject matter; no cross-references were given; application of terms was somewhat inconsistent; use of the headings required extensive study of the coding manual employed by the indexers; and the resulting output gave such minimal information that it was impossible to determine the relevance of the references retrieved. With a little more time spent in consultation with information specialists and possibly a little more money, a far more useful product could have resulted. Or, in more colloquial terms: garbage in, garbage out.

It is, I think, unfair to be too critical of existing Canadian data bases which have in many cases been produced by institutions working with limited funds and manpower. However, I would suggest that what we have is a situation where the good is the enemy of the best. For example, a file covering research in progress is a unique information resource meeting a variety of needs, particularly when research is frequently cross-disciplinary, leading beyond one's own area of specialization. Such an information service can identify experts for reviewing publications, consulting on projects, and speaking at conferences. One has then not an invisible but an electronic college. On the other hand, this type of file can not substitute for a subject bibliography; although it may contain bibliographic citations, it does not provide indexing coverage of an identified group of publications. Another type of file which I have already mentioned is the full text data base. Access to a limited number of significant publications can enhance efficient reference services; INFOGLOBE, for example, has become one of the most useful information services because of its broad coverage of Canadian and world news. However, electronic publishing will never solve the problem of information access nor eliminate the need for in-depth indexing and abstracting services. How often would you want to consult only the *Harvard Business Review* or only *Business Week* magazine? And as this type of file proliferates, we will soon find ourselves faced with the same problem of information retrieval that we now experience with print. Any serious researcher who wants more than a few names, facts or figures needs to cover the literature of his discipline in an organized, logical, coherent manner; hopscotching through a few full-text files can not accomplish that. Full-text services will be of more use for the business community who can rely on a few key journals for reliable news coverage. It would be an ideal medium for publications such as the *Journal of Economic Literature* or similar journals.

Despite the variety and scope of the Canadian data bases which do exist, there remains a need for substantial files, reliably covering subject areas of relevance to Canadians, with clear statements of selection policies, indexing methods, and lists of periodicals regularly scanned. The data base producers should offer sufficient documentation to enable searchers to work efficiently. The online systems vendor should make these files available on a responsive, powerful program and provide training and adequate trouble-shooting backup. My ideal scenario would include a data base with coverage in quality and years equal to CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS or PsycINFO, on a search program with all the options of DIALOG, and with the responsiveness and back-up of CAN/OLE. And I do not feel that my standards are set too high, nor that we should have to settle for products that do not perform well. A search done on title terms alone is not satisfactory – particularly when titles are still written to catch the eye rather than to describe the content. A data base which is suddenly reduced from eight years to three years in coverage becomes substantially less useful. A collection of two thousand references on a subject constitutes a substantial bibliography; it may work well as an in-house file; its usefulness as a single online bibliographic data base is questionable. A scattered assembly of private files, developed to meet the varying needs of their parent institutions with widely differing protocols, cannot substitute for data bases that meet the standards to which I have referred.

I am sure that each of us has experienced frustration in one area or another in searching online for Canadian information. The two areas that I feel are particularly inaccessible are general interest news and features material and also Canadian literature. Information for both these subject areas is extremely fragmented and therefore is time-consuming and expensive for the quantity and quality of the retrieval. References to Canadian bibliographies already in existence could make another valuable data base if well indexed and possibly linked eventually to full-text storage of the bibliographies themselves.

The subject of online bibliographic access is only one aspect of Canadian bibliography, but it is one which must be explored by all current and future indexing and abstracting services and extensive bibliographic projects. In the past, the printed index has been considered as the primary product, and the online file a spinoff. New bibliographic ventures now have many options regarding production and distribution of records; they may also benefit from the experience of the many producers who have been in the business for sufficient time to measure the impact of online services on printed products. Whether new initiatives come from private industry, the non-profit sector or government agencies, those responsible for planning and implementation will have to do extensive market research to determine the needs, expectations, and potential demand for a new product, as well as acquiring and maintaining sufficient technical expertise to ensure maximum public benefit from these very costly productions.

REFERENCES

1 *Directory of online data bases.* Santa Monica: Cuadra Associates. [Annual].
2 Lawton, Stephen B. ''Diffusion of automation in post-secondary institutions.'' *Canadian Library Journal* 38 (April 1981): 93-97.
3 Deschatelets, Gilles. *Enquête sur les services de téléréférence au Canada.* Québec: Université Laval, 1980.

IV

BRIEF NOTES ON SOME CANADIAN DATA BASES

A NOTE ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE CANADIAN REGISTER OF RESEARCHERS IN THE SOCIAL SCIENCES: PURPOSE, GENERAL DIMENSIONS, AND APPLICATIONS

S. PAULA MITCHELL
Assistant Director (Information Systems)
Social Sciences Computing Laboratory
The University of Western Ontario
London, Ontario N6A 5C2

INTRODUCTION

THE CANADIAN REGISTER of Research and Researchers in the Social Sciences (the *Register*) is presently being developed at the Social Science Computing Laboratory (SSCL), the University of Western Ontario, with a grant from the Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada (SSHRC).[1] This two-year development project was initiated in August, 1980; the computerized information system will be operational in the summer of 1982.

The *Register* project is building upon the SocScan data base established by the Social Science Federation of Canada through 1976-1978;[2] the project essentially involves further development of the original SocScan concept, an expansion and refinement of the informational content and structure of the original data base, and an extension of the range of applications that the data base will support.

Following the completion of this SSHRC-funded project in 1982, SSCL will continue to update and maintain the *Register*, and will provide information services from, and support research on the data base on a cost-recovery basis.

An Advisory Board of twelve Canadian social scientists has been established to review and advise on major policy questions pertaining to the development, future operation and use of the *Register*, and to provide advice and guidance that will promote the continuing usefulness of the *Register* to the social science community in Canada.

PURPOSE AND GENERAL DIMENSIONS OF THE *REGISTER*

The overall purpose of the *Register* is to collect and keep current career data from social scientists who are engaged in or qualified to perform research, and to develop these data into a national information resource which will support and promote the communication of scientific information within the social science community, as well as between social scientists and those who require their expertise.

The *Register* will consist of information collected directly from individual social scientists by questionnaire. *Register* information is multifaceted and falls into four broad categories: biographical information, the professional qualifications and specializations of social scientists, ongoing research information, and bibliographical information on selected publications. The disciplinary scope of the *Register* is broadly defined and covers law, education, the management sciences, industrial and labour relations, urban and environmental studies, library and information science, Canadian and other area studies, as well as those disciplines which traditionally comprise social science faculties. Social scientists in the academic sector, government, research institutes, and private industry will be invited to participate in the *Register*.

The *Register* will be developed and operated in a manner that will afford contributors with meaningful personal control over data supplied. Each contributor's informed consent to store, process and disseminate data in accord with stated purposes and policies will be obtained; contributors will have the option of designating any field of information as confidential. Data designated as confidential will be automatically suppressed in all forms of output in which individuals are identified, and will be used solely for statistical tabulation and analysis.

The *Register* will be kept current on an annual basis. The implementation of cost-effective renewal procedures which enable individual control over the quality, accuracy, and currency of information supplied to the *Register*, yet which minimize the time and effort required, represents perhaps the most critical design component for ensuring the ongoing viability and usefulness of the data base. Update procedures will be built around an annual report to each social scientist of information in his or her current record, for verification and update. A mechanism for individuals to initiate the reporting of changes in position, address and so on, will also be available.

The *Register* will be functionally bilingual in that information may be supplied in either French or English, and will be maintained and processed in the language provided, without translation.

APPLICATIONS

As a data base which combines information on ongoing research with biographical information, publications, and professional expertise in the social sciences, the *Register* is a multi-purpose information resource. The following is a summary of the most significant applications the *Register* is designed to support:

1 *Communication of information on social science research in progress, completed research, and available human resources in the social sciences.*

a. On-Line Services

In order to accomplish comprehensive on-line distribution in the most cost-effective way, it is planned to disseminate selected *Register* information through existing national on-line information systems. In accord with its mandate for promoting the communication of social science information in Canada, the National Library is sponsoring a pilot project to test the feasibility, cost, and merit of using the Canadian On-Line Enquiry System (CAN/OLE) as the vehicle for achieving this objective.[3] The pilot project, which is being carried out by the National Library, the Canada Institute for Scientific & Technical Information, and the Computing Laboratory, involves mounting a sub-base of the existing SocScan data base on CAN/OLE in a test mode. The pilot will lay the groundwork for designing the technical and informational components of sub-bases to be generated from the *Register*.[4]

b. Custom Information Services

In addition to low-cost reference access to selected *Register* information via CAN/OLE, SSCL will undertake production of specialized indexes and directories of ongoing research, social science expertise, disciplinary groups, and other partitions of the base as defined by clients. Custom information services provided by the Laboratory will include indexing, special processing and formatting, statistical analysis, and the production of camera-ready copy for publication.

2 *Studies on the nature, structure, funding and impact of social science research in Canada, and on the nature and structure of human resources in the social sciences.*

In addition to promoting the communication of social science information at a micro-level, the *Register* is designed to collect and structure elemental data which will enable macro-analytical studies on social science activities in Canada. A numeric data base consisting of administrative and other data which can be aggregated as a range of indicators, and which will support specialized analyses as defined by funding and research organizations and individual social scientists, will be generated from the *Register*. The Laboratory will undertake studies on the nature, structure and funding of research, on the nature and structure of human resources in the social sciences in Canada, and will produce a periodic publication of statistical information summarizing Canadian social science activities and trends.

3 *Use of the data base as a research survey frame.*

The *Register* has the potential for functioning as a powerful and cost-effective survey frame for research into policy questions of interest to the social science community, and for other research. The Laboratory will develop expertise with the *Register* as a survey frame and will support this research use by other investigators.

4 *Support of library and information sciences studies on social science information.*

It is hoped that the *Register* will serve as an object of study in the investigation of questions surrounding the development of social science information systems. Schools of library and information science will be invited to develop research proposals that will employ the *Register* in teaching or research applications.

CONTENTS

The following is an outline of the *Register's* informational content summarized under its four main informational categories:

1 Biographical Information

Name
Sex
Year of Birth
Citizenship
Mailing Address
Telephone
Employment Status
Student Status
Employment Information (including Position/Department/Organization)
Employment Activities

2 Professional Qualifications and Specialization
Broad Disciplinary Orientation
Areas of Specialization by Virtue of Formal Training
Areas of Current Specialization
Degrees Held (including Awarding Institution and Year Awarded)
Other Professional Certification
Languages and Level of Proficiency
Experience in Professional Activities (Referee for Professional Journal,
Policy Research, Appraiser for Grant Applications, etc.)
Membership in Professional Associations, Learned Societies

3 Current Research Project(s)
Name of Project
Description of Project (Abstract)
Geographic Focus
Methodologies Employed
Researcher's Role in Project
Names of Other Principal Researchers
Host Organization
Project Status
Type of Research
Relevance to Public Policy
Sources and Amounts of Project Funding
Citations of Unpublished Preliminary or Interim Reports (Up to Two)

4 Selected Publications
Citations of Most Significant Publications in Relation to Research
Concentrations and/or Professional Activities (Up to Six)
Number of Publications (Calendar Year)
Number of Publications (Total)

REFERENCES

1 SSHRC Grant Number: 420-80-004
Principal Investigator: EDWARD H. HANIS, Director and Adjunct Professor, Social Science Computing Laboratory.
Project Director: S. PAULA MITCHELL, Assistant Director (Information Systems), Social Science Computing Laboratory.

2 Canadian Directory Service of Social Scientists (SocScan).

3 For a full description of the pilot project, see Mitchell, S. Paula. "Initial Planning of a Pilot Project to Test the Feasibility and Merit of On-Line Service Through the Canadian On-Line Enquiry System." *Canadian Register of Research and Researchers in the Social Sciences, Planning Paper No. 4.* March 23, 1981.

4 In determining the content of the sub-base (and thus the depth and range of uses it can support), a balance will be struck between the creation of a base which will constitute a valuable on-line resource and complement existing resources, and the preservation of the individual privacy of participating social scientists. Because CAN/OLE is a public network in which the use of resident information is unscreened, biographical and administrative data such as sex, citizenship, mailing address, telephone number, number of publications produced by individuals, will *not* be included in the sub-base. Retrieval and processing of this type of information will be undertaken exclusively by the Laboratory from the main *Register* base, in accord with policies on approved uses and confidentiality.

MICROLOG

CATHERINE PROSS
Micromedia Limited
144 Front Street West, Toronto, Ontario M5J 2L7

MICROLOG is a clearinghouse for current report literature from the Canadian federal government, provincial governments, major regional and municipal governments, universities, research institutions, and other non-profit agencies. There are literally hundreds of government and institutional publishers active in Canada generating thousands of reference publications every year, many of them authoritative and unique in their field. *Microlog* serves as a central control and redistribution centre for this universe of public documentation.

It evolved out of three other services: *Profile* (which covered provincial publications and began in 1973), *Publicat* (federal, 1977) and *Urban Canada* (municipal, 1977). These were merged in 1979 into the one report service and the concept was expanded to include the publications of other organizations, many of them closely related to government. The list of government, corporate and institutional authors takes up fifteen closely printed pages in the paper copy annual cumulation.

The acquisition, processing and maintenance of a good documents collection is a complex and costly proposition. Many government publications are free of charge, but without cataloguing they lose much of their information value. *Microlog* provides access to this body of Canadian material better and at a lower cost than an individual institution can for itself. It is both an index and a subscription service.

Micrlog is aimed primarily at irregular publications that are elusive and difficult to acquire by conventional methods. As a result, regular periodicals are not covered by the Index. Departmental annual reports, financial statements, and statistical reviews, however, do appear.

Publications are also evaluated on reference value for inclusion. The Index cites only those titles of reference value to an audience wider than that likely to be reached by the original publication; commonly available general information pieces are excluded. Titles in series and monographs are included.

There is no exclusion by subject matter. The former services tended to eliminate scientific and technical materials, but these now form a major component of *Micrlog*. The latter can best be described as multidisciplinary, since it covers such diverse topics as the following:

Agriculture	Health Care
Behavioural and Social Sciences	Justice
Business and Economics	Labour

Canada North of 60
Communications
Culture and Humanities
Education
Energy
Environment
External Affairs
Fisheries
Forestry
Land Use and Planning
Life Sciences
Natural Resources and Earth Sciences
Physical Sciences
Public Administration
Public Works
Social Affairs
Transportation

Micrulog started life with a published index which continues to be produced. The *Micrulog* data base now available on CAN/OLE is derived from it. The file begins with 1979 and included 10,000 citations as of April 1981. Quarterly updates of about 1,000 records are planned. Citations can be accessed by eight indexes: title, author, organization, number, date, subject, form and language.

Copies of cited documents may be ordered by mail or phone from Micromedia Limited or by means of an online order through the CAN/OLE system. These documents may be ordered in either microfiche or paper form.

Cataloguing information on the monographs contained in the *Micrulog* collection is also available online through UTLAS. Entries are made according to AACR2 rules.

Micrulog is an ambitious, comprehensive service which plays a much-needed role in Canadian data base services. Specifically, Canadian information in fields such as the ones mentioned above has been collected with the goal of maximum coverage in mind. Access to this type of information is now much simpler for users who until recently have had to wrestle with a multiplicity of term combinations on international data bases in order to extract material particularly relevant to their own country.

For more information on *Micrulog,* please contact Micromedia Limited in Toronto, or phone (416) 593-5211.

THE *SPORT* DATA BASE: A CANADIAN FIRST

GILLES CHIASSON
Manager
Sport Information Research Centre
333 River Road, Ottawa, Ontario K1L 8B9

THE SPORT DATA BASE is quite a unique data base: it has the longest and broadest coverage of any in sport. It is one of the few Canadian data bases with an international content. It has been joined by West Germany which contributes materials to it and Unesco is considering it as a possible nucleus of an international information system for sport on the model of INIS (Nuclear physics) and AGRIS (Agriculture). It has permitted the production of other printed tools of great importance for the Canadian and world sport communities. For all these reasons we think that SPORT is a great data base and quite a unique one.

SPORT is a relatively young data base, having been started in 1975, but it has already accumulated some 85,000 records, 65,000 of which are periodical articles, 6,000 dissertations and 14,000 other books and reports (as of June 1981).

The sport community is a very diverse group and this diversity finds itself in the SPORT data base. For people who are confronted with the sport sciences for the first time, it is sometimes a surprise to find out what they represent. The obvious field that comes to mind is that of medicine - not only the medicine that looks after sport injuries but maybe more importantly the medicine of healthy people, that studies an athlete as a particularly healthy individual trying to surpass his own physical accomplishments or those of other people by better conditioning and control of his body. By "control," we imply the supremacy of the mind over sheer strength. And this brings in psychology with all its analytical and clinical techniques. Athletes use equipment and function in a special environment which brings in the contribution of architects and engineers. Athletes, teams and programs are organized by sport administrators. And then a segment of research observes the sport phenomenon from the point of view of the historian or sociologist or even the bibliographer. And so on and so forth, not forgetting the thousands of physical educators looking after the physical welfare of our children.

Our SPORT data base covers all those areas. This involves a very complex vocabulary and means that it is not sufficient to develop a thesaurus for sport alone. We have to use several others as well. Ours is slowly evolving and will contain some 4,000 terms.

Our users are also diverse in the sense that they range from a researcher to a weekend coach. To serve all these adequately we have introduced a rather unique three-tier code which indicates whether an item is research material, very practical material which is easy to understand, or somewhere in between. This permits anyone to select literature of a suitable readability and usefulness.

This data base is accessible universally since it is distributed in Canada by Infomart and worldwide by SDC. We also do provide a remote service for those who want to phone or write in to us to get a search done.

The Sport Information Resource Centre which compiles this data base is a full-fledged documentation centre with a small staff of 10 capable of providing copies or interlibrary loans of practically anything that is in the data base.

I mentioned earlier some tools that the creation of the data base made possible. One of these is the *Sport Bibliography* currently being published. So far four volumes have appeared and other four will be out before the end of the Summer. For those who still do not have access to automated systems (like many students who cannot afford search costs) the bibliography will permit better access to the sport literature.

We also produce a monthly indexing journal which serves as a current awareness service for the sport periodical literature. It is called the *Sport and Recreation Index* and provides easy and fast browsing through general subject areas.

What does the SPORT data base contribute to Canadian studies? Even though we cover the international literature, our best coverage is still of the Canadian literature. For example, of the 1,200 journals we subscribe to, 25% are Canadian. Most of these are house organs or news support but at least we archive these items for future reference. In the bibliography one will probably find that the subdivision "Canada" is found more often than that of any other country. There is no doubt that SPORT will be most useful to Canadian Studies, and we hope that the participants at this meeting will not hesitate to make full use of the services we offer.

V

RESOURCE COLLECTIONS FOR CANADIAN STUDIES: PROJECTS IN CANADA WHICH PROVIDE ACCESS

BIBLIOGRAPHIE RETROSPECTIVE POUR LES ETUDES CANADIENNES: LA CONTRIBUTION DE LA BIBLIOTHEQUE NATIONALE DU QUEBEC

LISE LAVIGNE
Bibliothèque nationale du Québec
1700 rue Saint-Denis
Montréal, Québec H2X 3K6

A DEUX REPRISES depuis la création de la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec en 1967, l'actuel conservateur en chef, Jean-Rémi Brault, a décrit devant un auditoire national les objectifs et les activités bibliographiques en cours ou en préparation à la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec, soit en 1974 à Vancouver lors de la Conférence nationale sur l'état de la bibliographie au Canada et, en 1978, lors d'une rencontre sur la bibliographie canadienne convoquée par la Société bibliographique du Canada.

Ce matin, je tenterai de vous décrire deux projets annoncés dans les précédentes communications de 1974 et de 1978 dont l'un est devenu une réalité, avec la parution au printemps de 1980 du premier tome de la *Bibliographie du Québec 1821-1967*, et l'autre le deviendra dans environ deux ans, car la mise en marche de la réalisation du *Catalogue collectif des imprimés québécois 1764-1820* a commencé en mars dernier.

BIBLIOGRAPHIE DU QUÉBEC 1827-1967

L'objectif global de la *Bibliographie du Québec 1821-1967* est de constituer un inventaire complet de tous les titres publiés ou imprimés au Québec durant cette période par le secteur privé dans les catégories suivantes, entendues au sens que leur donne l'UNESCO dans la recommandation concernant la normalisation internationale des statistiques de l'édition de livres et de périodiques:

1 les livres
2 les brochures
3 les livres de classe (manuels scolaires)
4 les thèses universitaires publiées
5 les tirages à part
6 les publications faisant partie d'une série
7 les ouvrages illustrés
8 les albums, livres et brochures illustrés
9 les albums et livres d'images pour les enfants
10 les publications éditées à des fins publicitaires (texte littéraire ou scientifique prédominant)
11 les programmes de spectacles, d'exposiions, de foires, etc.; les status et bilans des sociétés, directives, circulaires, etc.

12 les oeuvres musicales à condition que le texte soit plus important que la notation musicale

13 les atlas.

Devant l'ampleur du projet, car le nombre de titres quoiqu'encore indéterminé pourrait atteindre 150,000, la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec a opté pour une publication par tranches de 1,000 titres au fur et à mesure de la progression du travail bibliographique, pour le mettre le plus rapidement possible à la disposition des chercheurs. Nous reconnaissons certes les inconvénients de cette option, mais nous croyons qu'ils seront compensés dans une large mesure par les six index qui accompagneront chaque tome et que somme toute les avantages dépasseront les inconvénients.

Deux tomes ont paru à ce jour et un troisième paraîtra au cours de l'été ou au début de l'automne 1981. Chaque tome comprend deux volumes: un volume de 1,000 notices et un volume de six index. Les 1,000 notices de chaque tome sont réparties d'après l'ordre alphabétique des auteurs à l'intérieur des classes de la Library of Congress Classification. La description bibliographique observe les Règles de catalogage anglo-américaines, version française d'après l'édition nord-amérique de 1967 et les normes de l'ISBD(M): Description bibliographique internationale normalisée des monographies. De plus, cette description est établie de première main, ce qui signifie que lorsque tous les ouvrages de la collection de la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec auront été décrits, il sera nécessaire d'utiliser les collections des autres grandes bibliothèques du Québec et d'ailleurs. Parmi les données bibliographiques et biographiques recueillies, nous avons décidé de rendre disponibles les éléments suivants: l'auteur, le titre propre, la mention d'édition, d'impression et d'émission, l'adresse bibliographique, la collation, les notes ainsi que la mention de reliure, le prix au moment de la publication, le tirage s'il est disponible. S'ajoutent aussi les principales sources bibliographiques générales et spécialisées qui ont été consultées. Dans la mesure du possible, pour chaque titre, nous avons tenu compte de chaque édition, de chaque réimpression et de chaque émission. Pour les fins de cette bibliographie, une édition est l'ensemble des exemplaires d'une publication imprimés à une ou plusieurs reprises à partir d'une même composition typographique ou produits à partir d'un même exemplaire servant de matrice. Une réimpression désigne toute impression qui vient après la première, à l'intérieur de la même édition. Et une émission est la réimpression avec quelques changements de présentation; le changement le plus révélateur est la présence d'une nouvelle page de titre.

A chaque volume de 1,000 notices correspond un volume de six index. La multiplicité des index autorise des accès variés et favorise la recherche. C'est en pensant aux chercheurs de toute nature et à tous les spécialistes de la statistique, aux historiens, aux sociologues, aux bibliographes que ces index ont été compilés. Ce sont:

1 Index des auteurs, titres et vedettes secondaires

Cet index procure des accès aux noms personnels et collectifs et aux titres. De plus, les noms comprennent aussi ceux auxquels est attribuée une mention d'activité d'auteur, à savoir le compilateur, l'éditeur intellectuel, le coauteur, le collaborateur, le préfacier, le traducteur, l'illustrateur.

2 Index des éditeurs

Cet index regroupe les publications qu'un éditeur a offertes au public avec un sous-classement alphabétique des auteurs.

3 Index des imprimeurs

Cet index des imprimeurs présente les publications de chaque imprimeur avec un sous-classement alphabétique des auteurs.

4 Index chronologique

L'index chronologique regroupe les publications par date de parution avec un sous-classement alphabétique des auteurs.

5 Index des lieux d'édition

Sous chaque lieu d'édition se retrouve la liste des publications d'un tome donné publiées dans ce lieu. A long terme, cet index constituera une source de documentation pour ceux qui compilent des bibliographies régionales d'après le lieu d'origine des publications.

6 Index onomastique des sujets

Cet index complète la présentation méthodique des notices bibliographiques. Il fournit l'accès aux noms propres considérés comme des sujets. L'index onomastique comprend: les noms de personnes dont il est question dans un ouvrage (biographie, implication dans une affaire ou un procès, etc.); les noms de collectivités (personnes morales, ouvrages d'art, administration et institutions publiques, etc.); les noms de lieux et accidents géographiques (histoire, guide touristique, quartiers, monuments, etc.).

Des refontes d'index sont prévues à tous les dix tomes; nous ferons cependant exception à ce plan originel pour la première refonte, en raison de l'adoption à partir de janvier 1982 de la deuxième édition des Règles de catalogage anglo-américaines. En conséquence, nous publierons une première refonte à la suite de la parution du 5e tome qui sera le dernier à contenir des notices où le choix et la forme des vedettes auteurs seront conformes à la première édition des Règles de catalogage anglo-américaines. Ce 5e tome devrait vraisemblablement paraître pendant le premier trimestre de 1982.

Cette bibliographie sur support imprimé est disponible chez l'Editeur officiel, mais elle est également disponible sur ruban magnétique selon le format MARC canadien car elle est produite entièrement par procédé automatisé.

CATALOGUE COLLECTIF DES IMPRIMÉS QUÉBÉCOIS 1764-1820

Ce projet origine du sous-comité des bibliothèques de la CREPUQ, organisme qui regroupe les recteurs et principaux des universités du Québec qui, en mars 1979, confiait à la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec la responsabilité de la réalisation d'un catalogue collectif des laurentiana parusavant 1821 et conservés dans les bibliothèques universitaires du Québec et à la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec. Au départ, on prévoyait deux phases: une première où l'on recenserait les imprimés québécois et une seconde où l'on recenserait les documents relatifs au Québec, mais imprimés à l'extérieur du Québec avant 1821. Cette hypothèse de réalisation a été retenue et dans un premier temps c'est le catalogue collectif des imprimés québécois 1764-1820 que la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec réalisera avec la collaboration des bibliothèques universitaires du Québec , auxquelles s'est ajouté un autre partenaire: la bibliothèque de la ville de Montréal. Cette entreprise collective accéléra l'établissement par la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec de la bibliographie nationale définitive pour cette période.

CONTENU

Les critères d'inclusion sont donc le lieu d'édition, la date d'édition et le caractère monographique du document qui est reconnu, dans ce projet, aux livres, aux feuilles volantes, aux publications officielles et aux publications en série annuelles telles les almanachs et les calendriers. Une évaluation plutôt approximative des imprimés québécois 1764-1820 de ce type fixe à environ 1,500 le nombre total de titres publiés pendant cette période.

Notre ambition est la rédaction d'une notice bibliographique de l'exemplaire idéal, car il sera possible de comparer plusieurs exemplaires d'un même titre, de distinguer les éditions et éventuellement les émissions et les variantes issues d'une même composition typographique. Cependant, la notice fera mention des particularités des exemplaires de tous les participants. Le dépistage des documents par les participants se fera d'abord à partir du catalogue de la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec: *Laurentiana parus avant 1821* publié en 1976, puis par le dépouillement du catalogue chronologique, du catalogue topographique des collections anciennes et rares et par le tri manuel des fonds anciens et rares non catalogués des bibliothèques participantes, et aussi des bibliographies de Hare et Wallot[1] et de Tremaine.[2] Les documents relevés seront expédiés à la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec, où le personnel du Département de la réserve procédera au tri et à l'examen des exemplaires pour déterminer celui qui servira à la rédaction de la notice bibliographique et ceux dont les particularités feront l'objet de notes, après quoi les documents seront retournés à la bibliothèque à laquelle ils appartiennent.

Les notices qui constitueront une première partie de ce catalogue seront rangées selon l'ordre alphabétique de la vedette principale d'auteurs et la présentation des éléments d'information qu'elles contiendront sera conforme à l'ISBD(A), tandis que le choix et la forme des points d'accès s'établiront selon la deuxième édition des Règles de catalogage anglo-américaines. Les signatures seront relevées et enregistrées selon la formule développée par Gaskell,[3] tandis que les empreintes ne le seront pas car la programmation, à cette fin, de l'ordinateur que nous utilisons retarderait indûment la réalisation du projet et que de plus la tendance internationale ne favorise pas son utilisation. Deux notes dites locales apparaîtront dans la notice: la première relative aux particularités des exemplaires mentionnera les imperfections, la provenance de l'exemplaire dans une bibliothèque donnée, s'il y a lieu, de même que la reliure originale; la seconde indiquera les localisations par l'emploi des sigles officiels des bibliothèques canadiennes. La seconde partie du catalogue comprendra les index dont la présentation sera constante, c'est-à-dire que l'entrée d'index renverra à la notice respective identifiée par le nom et le prénom de l'auteur, le titre abrégé, la date d'édition et le numéro de la notice. Les index retenus sont:

1 l'index des titres incluant à la fois le titre propre et les autres titres
2 l'index des auteurs incluant tous ceux auxquels une menion d'activité d'auteur peut être reconnue
3 l'index des sujets établi selon le Répertoire des vedettes-matiere de la Bibliothèque de l'Université Laval
4 l'index des catégories de documents qui rassemblera des documents pour lesquels l'expression du contenu par les vedettes-matière n'est pas satisfaisante, par exemple les almanachs et les annuaires
5 l'index des lieux d'édition
6 l'index des imprimeurs dont le nom sera suivi du lieu d'exercice de leur profession
7 l'index des dates d'édition
8 l'index des provenances.

Le catalogue sera disponible sur support imprimé et sur support ordinolingue dans deux ans environ, si aucune embûche prévisible ne vient en retarder la réalisation.

Permettez-moi, en terminant, de vous communiquer quelques brèves informations relatives à des activités bibliographiques de la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec qui, depuis 1978, ont connu une certaine évolution et qui pourraient être de quelque utilité dans la poursuite des études canadiennes.

En premier lieu, je voudrais vous signaler la parution prochaine du premier tome du catalogue des publications en série québécoises consacré aux revues publiées au Québec sur support imprimé par le secteur privé depuis les débuts jusqu'à novembre 1980. Ce catalogue décrira les quelque 5,500 titres de revues que possède la Bibliothèque nationale du Québec et indiquera l'état de ses collections. Par revues, nous entendons les publications en série paraissant plus d'une fois par année et dont le format ne dépasse généralement pas vingt-huit centimètres. L'ouvrage comprendra trois volumes: 2 consacrés aux notices et 1 aux index. Les notices observeront les Règles de catalogage anglo-américaines, version française d'après l'édition nord-américaine (1967) et l'ISBD(S). Deux index permettront, l'un un accès aux auteurs, titres et vedettes secondaires, l'autre un accès au sujet établi selon le Répertoire des vedettes-matière de la Bibliothèque de l'Université Laval.

Nous venons de franchir l'étape de la correction finale de la liste d'imprimante préalable à l'envoi du ruban magnétique chez le photocomposeur; nous avons tout lieu de croire que ce catalogue sera disponible chez l'Editeur officiel du Québec au début de septembre 1981.

Finalement, je voudrais vous indiquer que la *Bibliographie du Québec* courante verra s'ajouter de nouvelles catégories de documents à son contenu à la lumière des résultats de l'enquête menée en juin 1979. Les documents cartographiques y seront inclus au plus tard en janvier 1982, mais il n'est pas impossible qu'ils y soient insérés plus tôt. L'enquête a révélé que l'ordre de priorité d'insertion souhaité par les répondants québécois est le suivant: 1° les thèses et mémoires, 2° les cartes, 3° les disques, 4° les microéditions, 5° les partitions musicales, tandis que les répondants étrangers l'établissent comme suit: 1° les thèses et mémoires, 2° les disques, 3° les microéditions, 4° les cartes, 5° les partitions musicales. Nous examinons présentement de quelle manière nous pourrions le plus rapidement et le plus adéquatement possible répondre aux attentes des chercheurs, qui comme nous supportent mal les restrictions que l'on impose présentement au nom de la nécessité à nos ressources pour réaliser les produits bibliographiques dont ils ont besoin.

RÉFÉRENCES

1 Hare, John; et Wallot, Jean-Pierre. *Les imprimés dans le Bas-Canada 1801-1810: bibliographie analytique*. Montréal: Presses de l'Université de Montréal, 1967, vol. 1.
2 Tremaine, Marie. *A Bibliography of Canadian Imprints 1751-1800*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1952. 705p.
3 Gaskell, Philip. *A New Introduction to Bibliography*. Oxford, 1972, pp. 328-332.

CANADIANA 1867-1900: MONOGRAPHIES OU TOUT CE QU'IL FAUT CONNAÎTRE SUR LES VOYAGES, AVENTURES, TRIBULATIONS ET DOULEURS DE CROISSANCE D'UNE BIBLIOGRAPHIE NATIONALE RÉTROSPECTIVE DEPUIS 1953 JUSQU'À AUJOURD'HUI

MICHEL THÉRIAULT
Chef, Division de la bibliographie nationale rétrospective
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4

A version of this work in English is available from the author.

INTRODUCTION

La recommandation no 1 approuvée par les participants à la Conférence nationale sur l'état de la bibliographie au Canada (Vancouver, 22-24 mai 1974), disait ce qui suit:

> Que cette conférence, par l'intermédiaire du Secrétariat d'Etat, conseille la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada sur l'importance que revêt l'achèvement de *Canadiana 1867-1900, et sur la nécessité de fournir des fonds adéquats à la Division de la bibliographie rétrospective de la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada, afin de lui permettre de terminer ce projet et d'en entreprendre d'autres similaires, dans le but de compléter la bibliographie nationale rétrospective du Canada.*[1]

Comme vous le savez et comme vous pouvez le lire dans l'édition imprimée de l'introduction à *Canadiana 1867-1900,*[2] ce projet débuta en 1953, connut des hauts et des bas jusqu'au point de s'arrêter au début des années 1970. La résolution reproduite plus haut amena la "résurrection" de la Division en 1974 et la reprise du travail en 1975-1976.

Où en est le projet de compilation de *Canadiana 1867-1900* maintenant? C'est ce que je viens vous expliquer aujourd'hui.

1 RETRO 1975-1981

Au moment de la reprise des travaux, des facteurs apparus depuis quelques années demandaient que certaines règles du jeu soient modifiées et que la méthodologie soit adaptée à ces nouvelles circonstances.

En effet, depuis 1973, le monde bibliographique avait connu des nouveaux développements qui influenceraient beaucoup RETRO (nom sous lequel le projet devint connu, le nom officiel de la division étant trop long). Les systèmes bibliographiques automatisés étaient en plein essor à la Bibliothèque nationale et RETRO devait tenir compte de leurs exigences et de leurs possibilités. D'autre part, près de vingt mille notices étaient déjà rassemblées. Il n'était pas possible de repartir à zéro pour tenir compte des exigences de l'automatisation des notices, mais nous ne pouvions non plus ignorer les nouvelles normes bibliographiques et reprendre où nos prédécesseurs avaient laissé. Tout ce que nous pouvions faire dans les circonstances était d'adapter les notices aux nouvelles normes, risquant ainsi de commettre certains péchés bibliographiques, ce qui d'ailleurs arriva. Concrètement, pour ceux qui connaissent des normes appelées ISBD(M), nous avons dû ajouter une mention d'auteur à chaque notice, sans savoir dans les trois-quarts des cas sous quelle forme apparaissait cette mention dans l'ouvrage. Je m'empresse d'ajouter qu'à cause du processus continu de vérification et de correction mis en place, cette proportion de notices comportant une mention d'auteur incorrecte se réduit de jour en jour.

De 1975 à 1981, le nombre des notices passa de vingt mille à plus de trente-sept mille. Pourquoi et comment cela se passa-t-il?

1 Comme les localisations sont ajoutées aux notices énumérées dans la bibliographie, ces notices furent vérifiées dans le catalogue collectif des livres de la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada tel qu'il se présente maintenant; en plus d'ajouter les localisations sur les fiches, des nouvelles notices furent préparées quand d'autres éditions de l'ouvrage en train d'être vérifié étaient découvertes ou que d'autres ouvrages du même auteur l'étaient à leur tour.

2 En 1976, les dossiers bibliographiques de Bernard Amtmann furent acquis par la Bibliothèque nationale. Ils sont sur fiches et représentent tous les titres offerts en vente par l'intermédiaire de ses catalogues. Environ cinq mille notices ont été tirées uniquement de cette source, et près de la moitié n'ont pu être retrouvées au catalogue collectif des livres.

3 Plusieurs douzaines de bibliographies thématiques ou locales ont été publiées au Canada. Elles sont systématiquement dépouillées et fournissent ainsi d'autres notices qui nous manquent.

Cependant, certains genres d'ouvrages n'ont pas fait l'objet de recherches méthodiques et n'ont été inclus que si le personnel en rencontrait les notices dans telle ou telle bibliographie, v.g. les publications officielles municipales et de comtés, les affiches, la musique en feuille, les traductions publiées à l'étranger d'oeuvres d'auteurs canadiens, les manuels scolaires.

La publication de *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographies* a débuté en 1980. Je m'empresse d'ajouter que cette première tranche de la bibliographie nationale rétrospective est publiée sur microfiche en plusieurs livraisons. Les détails techniques sur cette publication sont donnés plus loin (voir surtout les sections 3.1 et 5).

2 PORTÉE DE CANADIANA 1867-1900

De façon générales, la responsabilité de RETRO s'exerce actuellement sur les monographies canadiennes publiées entre 1867 et 1900 inclusivement. Les critères d'inclusion ont été appliqués de façon aussi maximaliste que possible. Notre devise est

"Dans le doute, inclure": en cas de doute, les notices ont été incluses dans la base de données, puisqu'il est plus facile d'enlever plus tard une notice de la base de données que d'effectuer des recherches pour en trouver une qui aurait dû être incluse. Les critères suivants ont été suivis:

2.1 OUVRAGES INCLUS

Par monographies s'entendent ici les ouvrages publiés séparément dans ce qui s'appelle de façon générale le secteur privé, avec des exceptions définies plus bas. Les brochures, dépliants et in-plano sont inclus dans la bibliographie, comme le sont aussi les tirages à part si, dans ce dernier cas, il est au moins possible que les articles ne soient pas que détachés d'un ouvrage ou d'un périodique (cf. la politique suivie dans les cas douteux au début de la section 2). De façon générale, sont inclus les ouvrages suivants:

ouvrages publiés par les éditeurs commerciaux;

ouvrages publiés par des collectivités à but non lucratif et des individus;

ouvrages écrits par des fonctionnaires dans l'exercice de leurs fonctions ou des membres du Parlement, en autant que l'auteur soit identifié (v.g. un discours sur le budget publié par l'imprimeur de la Reine comme monographie est inclus parce que le nom du ministre est connu; le même critère s'applique au discours d'un député ou au rapport d'un chercheur pour la Commission géologique): ces ouvrages, suivant en cela les règles modernes de catalogage, seraient traités comme des publications gouvernementales, mais ils ont été inclus parce qu'ils contribuent à donner aux usagers un meilleur coup d'oeil sur les thèmes sociaux, historiques et politiques de cette époque;

atlas;

musique imprimée, y compris la musique en feuille; rapports d'assemblées générales annuelles;

publications officielles municipales et de comtés;

publications officielles non canadiennes.

2.2 OUVRAGES EXCLUS

Les ouvrages exclus de cette bibliographie sont les suivants:

publications gouvernementales fédérales, provinciales et territoriales (sauf pour les exceptions énumérées dans 2.1);

publications en série (y compris les rapports annuels, sauf les rapports d'assemblées générales annuelles comme nous avons mentionné en 2.1);

journaux;

tous les documents manuscrits (y compris les thèses non publiées);

cartes:

documents audio-visuels sauf s'ils sont publiés en tant que livres (un album publié de photographie serait inclus, mais pas des photos individuelles ou des enregistrements, sonores);

brevets.

2.3 DATE

La date de publication a été bien sûr le premier critère. Tous les ouvrages inclus doivent avoir été publiés au moins en partie entre 1867 et 1900 inclusivement. Les ouvrages dont la date de publication est approximative ne sont inclus que si l'une des dates possibles se trouve à l'intérieur de la période 1867-1900. Ainsi, un ouvrage dont la date de publication est entre 1857 et 1871 sera inclus, comme le sera un ouvrage en plusieurs volumes publié entre 1857 et 1871, ou encore un ouvrage en plusieurs volumes publié entre 1900 et 1908. Une date comme "186-" sur la notice veut dire que l'ouvrage a été publié entre 1860 et 1869 et qu'il sera inclus. Les différents tirages, éditions ou variantes d'un ouvrage sont inclus en autant qu'ils sont publiés à l'intérieur de la période 1867-1900. Le cas échéant, une note sur les éditions pré-1867 est ajoutée à la notice de la première édition post-1968 (v.g. "Première éd.: Québec, T. Cary 1843" pourrait être une note figurant sur la notice de la 2e éd. datée de 1869).

2.4 "CANADIEN"

Le terme "canadien" a été interprété largement et englobe plusieurs cas:

2.4.1 *Ouvrages publiés au Canada:*

Par Canada, nous voulons dire le Canada à l'intérieur de ses frontières de 1980. Par exemple, les ouvrages publiés à Terre-Neuve avant son entrée dans la Confédération ou en Colombie Britannique entre 1867 et 1871 sont inclus. Quand le lieu canadien n'est pas le premier ou le plus important de l'adresse bibliographique, nous incluons quand même l'ouvrage (v.g. "London; New York; Toronto: Macmillan" rendrait cet ouvrage d'intérêt pour RETRO, même si l'édition canadienne ou l'adresse bibliographique canadienne n'est que de pure forme, pour des raisons de protection du droit d'auteur). Il va sans dire que sont inclus les ouvrages dans les langues autres que le français, l'anglais, l'inuktitut ou les langues amérindiennes.

2.4.2 *Ouvrages publiés à l'étranger mais écrits par des Canadiens:*

Ce critère ne cause habituellement pas de problèmes; selon l'usage de RETRO, nous l'avons interprété de la façon la plus large possible, ce qui fait que nous incluons tous les ouvrages d'une personne née au Canada, même si elle a quitté le pays durant sa tendre enfance. Aucun problème ne se pose non plus pour les ouvrages publiés au Canada de personnes nées ailleurs mais ayant vécu quelque temps au Canada. Mais que faire de leurs ouvrages publiés en dehors du Canada? Nous avons décidé d'inclure ou non ces ouvrages après avoir jugé si le séjour au Canada était en soi temporaire ou non (la longueur du séjour n'a en soi rien à voir avec la question). Voici quelques exemples réels:

Immigrants islandais: les Islandais écrivent et publient beaucoup. Plusieurs d'entre eux, poètes ou journalistes, avaient publié avant de venir au Canada. Comme ces Islandais vinrent au Canada pour s'établir en permanence, *tous* leurs ouvrages publiés au Canada ou ailleurs furent inclus, quel qu'en fût le sujet.

Juliana H. Ewing: Ecrivain britannique pour les enfants, elle vécut au Canada durant quelques années avec son mari, celui-ci étant officier dans l'armée britannique en garnison à Fredericton, Nouveau Brunswick. Leur séjour, en soi et en fait, fut temporaire. Les ouvrages inclus sont ceux publiés en dehors du Canada *pendant* son séjour au Nouveau-Brunswick, ainsi que ceux publiés plus tard au Royaume-Uni dont nous savons d'autres sources que le sujet avait été inspiré par son séjour.

John Taylor: Né en Angleterre en 1808, il vint au Canada comme ministre méthodiste en 1832, devint membre de la secte des Irvingites, et, plus tard, un mormon. Il quitta le Canada en 1838 et devint par la suite chef de l'Eglise de Jésus-Christ des Saints du Septième Jour, dont le siège est à Salt Lake City, Utah, et fut à l'origine du mouvement d'immigration mormonne au Canada. Son court séjour au Canada fut temporaire et il n'y publia d'ailleurs rien. Ses nombreuses publications post-1867 ne sont pas incluses puisqu'il avait quitté le Canada à cette époque et qu'elles ne se rapportent pas au Canada.

2.4.3 *Ouvrages d'intérêt canadien publiés à l'étranger:*

Nous ne rencontrons aucun problème quand le sujet principal est le Canada. La bibliographie nationale courante *Canadiana* utilise la règle du tiers: au moins un tiers du contenu doit se rapporter au Canada pour que l'ouvrage soit inclus dans *Canadiana*. Nous interprétons beaucoup plus largement le concept d'intérêt canadien dans la bibliographie rétrospective. Les ouvrages sont inclus en autant que les références au Canada sont plus que quelques courts passages au hasard (les ouvrages généraux de référence comme les encyclopédies sont exclus, bien sûr.). Que veulent dire "intérêt canadien" ou "sujet canadien" quand cette référence renvoie à une personne ou à une aire géographique situées en dehors des frontières actuelles? Par exemple, sont inclus les ouvrages relatifs à l'influence française dans la vallée du Mississippi, aux colonies canadiennes-françaises du Montana, du Minnesota et du Michigan, au travail des missionnaires catholiques canadiens-français en Oregon. Dans tous ces cas cependant, sont exclus les ouvrages relatifs à ces lieux après la fin de l'influence canadienne. En d'autres mots, les critères ne peuvent être appliqués de façon trop stricte et l'interprétation donnée dépend du sujet ou des lieux en question.

2.5 RENSEIGNEMENTS SUPPLÉMENTAIRES

Comme le travail de compilation a amené la division à correspondre avec beaucoup d'individus et d'institutions, certains renseignements ne figurant pas dans les notices à cause de leur nature non bibliographique ou marginale pourraient s'avérer utiles à certains chercheurs et bibliographes.

Les usagers qui voudraient plus de renseignements sur des ouvrages particuliers n'ont qu'à écrire à l'adresse suivante:

Division de la bibliographie nationale rétrospective
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4

3 RETRO SUR MICROFICHE

Après avoir examiné le contenu de la bibliographie, voyons maintenant comment ce contenu est organisé.

3.1 PRÉSENTATION

Cette édition de *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographies* sur COM (échellede réduction 42:1) est publié à partir de la base de données lisibles par machine contenant les notices RETRO crées par la Bibliothèque nationale dans le format Mini-MARC.[3] Cette édition sur microfiche contient un registre et cinq index:

A Index des auteurs/titres
B Index chronologique (par année de publication)
C Index des éditeurs/imprimeurs
D Index des lieux de publication/impression
E Index des sujets

Le premier registre de base et les index qui l'accompagnent sont suivis de plusieurs livraisons publiées trimestriellement. Chaque livraison comprend un registre énumérant les notices ajoutées à la base de données depuis la livraison précédente (au rythme de 40 à 60 notices par jour ouvrable) ainsi qu'un ensemble complet d'index récapitulatifs à toutes les notices publiées jusqu'à cette date. Les notices corrigées depuis la dernière parution apparaissent dans le registre de la livraison suivante, et les notices de l'index renvoient aux notices dans le registre le plus récent. Les abonnés doivent donc conserver toutes les livraisons du registre, tout en pouvant jeter les différentes livraisons des index, sauf la dernière puisqu'elle comprend toutes les précédentes. La dernière livraison trimestrielle, énumérant les dernières notices entrées dans la base de données, sera suivie d'une édition sur microfiche récapitulant en totalité toutes les livraisons du registre et des index. Cette récapitulation est comprise dans le prix de l'abonnement.

3.2 REGISTRE

Le corps de la bibliographie, i.e. la liste des notices complètes, est le registre. Ce registre est constitué par une série de notices dotées chacune d'un numéro séquentiel attribué par l'ordinateur et imprimées en suivant cet ordre. Chaque notice du registre est complète en ce qu'elle reproduit toutes les données bibliographiques disponibles, i.e.

numéro de la notice dans le registre
vedette principale
titre
mention d'auteur
mention d'édition
adresse bibliographique
collation
mention de collection
notes
vedettes-matière

rappel des vedettes secondaires
sigles des bibliothèque possédant des exemplaires
numéro de fiche de la Library of Congress
numéro de contrôle de *Canadiana*

Le numéro de notice dans le registre est reproduit au coin supérieur gauche de chaque notice dans le registre. Ces notices sont placées par ordre numérique de haut en bas sur chaque colonne de la fiche et les notices sont disposées en paragraphes.

Voici un spécimen de notice dans le registre, comprenant trois éléments fictifs: le numéro de notice dans le registre, le numéro de fiche de la Library of Congress et le numéro de contrôle de *Canadiana*. Le spécimen est suivi d'une explication de certains éléments de la notice.

16389
Casgrain, Henri Raymond, 1831-1904.
Un pèlerinage au pays d'Evangéline / par
H.-R. Casgrain. - 2e éd. - Québec : Impr. de
L.-J. Demers, 1888.
544 p. : carte ; 23 cm.
Comprend des références bibliographiques.
I. Titre
Mention de fonds: NBW OOCC OONL OOU*
OPET OTY OWTU QMBN QMU QQL QRUQR QSHERU
22-12455
CA79-504853-X

Eléments de la notice:

16389:

Numéro de la notice dans le registre COM, représentant l'ordre numérique tel qu'attribué par l'ordinateur. Ce numéro apparaît au coin supérieur gauche de la notice dans le registre, et au coin inférieur droit de chaque notice des index.

OTU, QMU, etc:

Sigles des localisations, chacun placé par ordre alphabétique et représentant une bibliothèque canadienne particulière. Le sigle identifie les institutions qui, possédant l'ouvrage en question, ont rapporté ce fait au catalogue collectif des livres de la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada. Les sigles sont tirés de *Sigles des bibliothèques canadiennes*. - 8e éd. - [Ottawa]: Bibliothèque nationale du Canada, 1979.

Quand certains numéros de volumes apparaissent entre parenthèses (v.g. v.1, 3) après le sigle de localisation dans le cas d'ouvrages en plusieurs volumes, cela veut dire que la bibliothèque en question ne possède que les volumes indiqués entre parenthèses.

L'astérisque apparaissant après un sigle de localisation indique que la bibliothèque en question ne prête pas l'ouvrage par prêt-entre-bibliothèques.

(mfc) (mfm) (phot.) (Cet élément n'apparaît pas dans la notice spécimen ci-haut):

Ces codes apparaissant entre parenthèses après le sigle de localisation veulent dire que la bibliothèque en question ne possède pas l'ouvrage sur copie papier, mais plutôt sur microfiche, microfilm ou sous forme de photocopie.

22-12455:

Le numéro de la fiche de la Library of Congress, s'il est disponible, apparaît au coin inférieur gauche de la notice dans le registre.

CA79-504853-X:

Le numéro de contrôle de *Canadiana* apparaît au coin inférieur droit de la notice dans le registre et à la fin des notices d'index. Il se décompose comme suit: un préfixe alphabétique suivi des deux derniers chiffres de l'année durant laquelle le numéro a été attribué, puis un numéro de série suivi d'un numéro de révision.

3.3 INDEX

RETRO est complété par *5 index*:

- **A** Index des auteurs/titres
- **B** Index chronologique (par année de publication)
- **C** Index des éditeurs/imprimeurs
- **D** Index des lieux de publication/impression
- **E** Index des sujets

Chaque notice dans l'index comprend le numéro de la notice complète publiée dans le registre. Beaucoup d'usagers ne devraient pas avoir à consulter le registre pour identifier ou vérifier un ouvrage parce que chaque index contient une description bibliographique sommaire de l'ouvrage, comprenant les éléments suivants, s'ils sont disponibles:

vedette principale
titre
mention d'auteur
mention d'édition
adresse bibliographique
collation
sigles des localisations
numéro de contrôle de *Canadiana*
numéro de la notice dans le registre

Les usagers peuvent aussi trouver dans *l'Index A* (Auteurs/Titres) des renvois à la vedette principale, des vedettes secondaires au nom des coauteurs, aux titres et sous-titres significatifs ainsi qu'aux autres éléments de la description bibliographique qui pourraient être interprétés comme un titre ou une partie significative d'un titre.

L'*Index B* (Chronologique) énumère les ouvrages par ordre alphabétique de vedette principale sous l'année de publication. Dans le cas de dates incertaines, la date *la plus vieille* est utilisée comme élément de classement. Cette date n'est choisie qu'en vue de classement et ne transmet subrepticement aucun message relativement à une date de publication plus probable. Dans le cas des dates multiples, la *première* sert d'élément de classement. Par conséquent, bien que la bibliographie couvre la période 1867-1900, l'index chronologique contient des dates précédant 1867 à cause des ouvrages en plusieurs volumes dont au moins un volume est publié avant 1867, et des ouvrages avec une date de publication approximative ou indéterminée. V.g., dans l'Index B,

“18--” = 1800
‘187-” = 1870
“entre 1871 et 1873” = 1871
“1883-1886” = 1883
“après 1875” = 1875.

L'*Index C* (Editeurs/Imprimeurs) énumère les ouvrages par ordre alphabétique de vedette principale sous les noms des éditeurs ou des imprimeurs ou des deux à la fois, classés eux aussi alphabétiquement. Dans le nom, les initiales représentant des prénoms sont renvoyées après le patronyme.

L'*Index D* (Lieux de publication/impression) énumère les ouvrages par ordre alphabétique sous le nom des lieux de publication et d'impression. Les noms de lieux sont classés par ordre alphabétique tels qu'ils apparaissent dans l'adresse bibliographique. Ce qui veut dire que Québec et Quebeci (latin) sont en tête de sections différentes; Montréal et Marianopoli (latin) aussi.

L'*Index E* (Sujets) n'énumère que les *noms propres* (i.e. les noms des personnes ou des collectivités associées comme sujets à un ouvrage). Aucune autre vedette-matière n'est créée pour les ouvrages énumérés dans cette bibliographie. Les vedettes-matière de collectivités sont unilingues françaises ou anglaises, tout dépendant de la langue de la publication. Un usager cherchant des ouvrages sur le Canadian Pacifique, par exemple, *doit* chercher sous Chemin de fer du Canadien Pacifique *et* Canadian Pacific Railway Co. Aucun renvoi n'est établi d'autres formes de nom, d'équivalents du nom, etc.

Des renseignements supplémentaires sur chacun des index sont disponibles dans l'introduction située au début de chaque index.

4 CONVENTIONS SUIVIES DANS LA DESCRIPTION BIBLIOGRAPHIQUE

RETRO étant une *bibliographie* et non le *catalogue* d'une bibliothèque particulière, les conventions dont nous parlons plus bas ne furent pas suivies comme le sont généralement les règles de catalogage dans une bibliothèque, mais plutôt comme normes générales bien sûr adaptées aux particularités du projet.

Les Règles de catalogage anglo-américaines (Montréal: Association canadienne des bibliothécaires de langue française, 1973) avec le chapitre 6 revisé (Montréal: ASTED, 1975) en fonction de la *Description bibliographique internationale normalisée (monographies)* ou ISBD(M), furent les normes utilisées pour la vedette et la description bibliographique, avec certaines exceptions:

4.1 CHOIX DE LA VEDETTE PRINCIPALE (cf. règle 22B)

Dans le cas de chartes, de lois créant des collectivités ou d'autres documents semblables légiférant sur des collectivités et émanant d'une instance politique, le nom de la collectivité a été choisi comme vedette principale et une vedette secondaire a été établie au nom de l'instance politique en question.

4.2 PRÉSENTATION DE LA VEDETTE PRINCIPALE (cf. règle 43)

Comme RETRO est un projet de nature historique, la forme la plus développée possible du patronyme et des prénoms fut utilisée la plupart du temps; dans les cas relativement peu nombreux où une forme plus courte fut employée en vedette, une note indiquant le nom complet de l'auteur fut ajoutée à la notice.

4.3 MENTION D'AUTEUR (cf. règle 134D, chapitre 6 rév.)

Le projet RETRO ayant été conçu au départ comme un simple répertoire, le travail n'a généralement pas été effectué avec les ouvrages en main; par conséquent, il fallut souvent deviner quelle forme devait prendre la mention d'auteur selon l'ISBD(M). Ce segment de la notice est celui qui sans doute sera souvent à corriger plus tard, au moment où les bibliothécaires et autres usagers compareront nos données avec les ouvrages. Les usagers de la bibliographie comprendront que puisque la description bibliographique fut établie selon l'ISBD(M) *bien que dans la plupart des cas* nous n'avions *pas* l'ouvrage en main, ils ne devraient donc pas automatiquement conclure que l'ouvrage répertorié est une variante de l'exemplaire qu'ils connaissent et qu'ils ont vu.

4.4 ADRESSE BIBLIOGRAPHIQUE (cf. règles 136-140, chapitre 6 rév.)

La règle séparant éditeur et imprimeur et qui donne le résultat suivant: "lieu: éditeur, date (lieu d'impression: imprimeur)", fut ignorée parce qu'il n'était pas possible, la plupart du temps, de différencier l'éditeur de l'imprimeur. Les deux formes furent dont combinées et cela donna: "lieu: nom, date."

4.5 VEDETTE SECONDAIRES (cf. règle 33)

Nous avons été très larges au moment de la décision d'établir des vedettes secondaires. En fait, une vedette secondaire a été établie au nom de n'importe quelle personne ou collectivité associée à la notice, quel que soit le mode de ce lien, en autant que le nom en vedette secondaire pouvait se trouver dans la description ou dans une note. Des vedettes secondaires furent même établies au nom de collectivité parrainant une activité ("sous les auspices de . . .") ou de collectivités ayant invité un conférencier ("conférence lue devant les membres de la Société Saint-Jean-Baptiste de Montréal").

4.6 VEDETTES-MATIÈRE

Aucune norme préétablie n'a été utilisée au moment d'établir les vedettes-matière.

Les noms propres ont été tirés de la description ou des notes, mais la forme la meilleure ou la plus complète du nom a été recherchée afin de l'utiliser comme vedette-matière.

5. ABONNEMENT

Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographies, édition sur microfiche, est publié et distribué par la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada. Le prix du registre de base, des index, des suppléments trimestriels et de la récapitulation sur microfiche est de $48.00 au Canada et de $58.00 à l'étranger. Toutes les commandes doivent être accompagnéés d'un chèque ou mandat-poste à l'ordre du Receveur général du Canada. Les demandes de renseignements et les commandes doivent être adressées à:

Division de la rédaction de Canadiana
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4

Nous étudions d'autre part la possibilité de publier dans quelques années une édition imprimée de *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographies.*

6 RETRO 1981+

6.1 RETRO et DOBIS

Tout le monde connaît DOBIS! Petit à petit, les différents secteurs de la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada utilisent ce système de création, de gestion et d'entreposage des données bibliographiques. Le tour de RETRO viendra sûrement dans quelques années, mais il ne m'est pas possible d'être plus précis pour le moment.

6.2 LE PROCHAIN PROJET RETRO

Je suis en mesure d'annoncer que la prochaine tranche de RETRO sera *Canadiana pré-1867: Monographies.* Nous commencerons à y travailler probablement durant 1982 tous en ne cessant pas bien sûr de corriger et d'augmenter la banque de données de *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographies.* Je dit "pré-1867" et non "1751-1866" parce que vous n'ignorez pas nous incluons dans *Canadiana* les ouvrages publiés à l'étranger par des Canadiens ou ayant un rapport avec le Canada, ce qui veut dire que les ouvrages les plus anciens dans cette tranche seront ceux publiés en Europe avant l'introduction de l'imprimerie au Canada en 1751.

De façon générale, pour la prochaine tranche et les autres à venir, il est vraisemblable que nous travaillerons avec la petite équipe à Ottawa (3 à 5 personnes) aidée de personnes ou d'institutions engagées à forfait. Il n'est tout simplement pas possible pour la Bibliothèque nationale d'obtenir du Conseil du trésor les ressources humaines nécessaires pour augmenter le personnel de la Division.

6.3 ET LE FUTUR?

Comme vous pourrez le constater en lisant la liste qui suit, le projet RETRO a du pain sur la planche pour longtemps. Quelles sont les tranches de *Canadiana pré-1950* sur lesquelles nous aurons à travailler? En voici une énumération qui, *je tiens à insister sur ce fait,* n'est pas établie dans quelque ordre de priorité que ce soit. Rien n'a été décidé encore au sujet des tranches de RETRO subséquentes à la prochaine. En fait, la Bibliothèque nationale a besoin de vous, bibliothécaires, bibliographes, historiens et autres chercheurs: indiquez-nous vos besoins! Profitez de la discussion d'aujourd'hui! Nous prendrons bonne note de vos désirs et les évaluerons au moment d'établir notre marche à suivre, laquelle bien sûr devra tenir compte d'un ensemble d'autres facteurs.

Canadiana pré-1950

1867-1900	Monographies (en voie de publication)
pré-1867	Monographies (débutera en 1982)
pré-1867	Publications officielles
1867-1900	Publications officielles
	N.B. ces deux dernières tranches peuvent être combinées
1901-1949	Monographies
	N.B. cette tranche peut être subdivisée chronologiquement
1901-1949	Publications officielles
	N.B. cette tranche peut être subdivisée par type d'instance politique ou chronologiquement ou par une combinaison des deux façons
pré-1949	Publications en série
pré-1949	Journaux
pré-1949	Thèses
	N.B. les thèses ne sont pas publiées et ne devraient pas figurer ici en soi, mais leur nature un peu spéciale et leur importance nous empêche de les laisser de côté
pré-1969	Disques
	N.B. le dépôt légal pour les disques ne fut exigé qu'à partir de 1969, ce qui rend la date "magique" de 1949-1950 impossible à appliquer ici
pré-1949	Documents audio-visuels
pré-198?	Microformes
	N.B. la date "magique" sera fixée au moment où le dépôt légal sera exigé pour ce type de support documentaire
pré-19??	Cartes géographiques

Quid vobis videtur?

CONCLUSION

En guise de conclusion, je ne veux que lancer un "appel à tous." RETRO, c'est bien beau, mais le projet sera encore meilleur si *vous* y collaborez. Signalez-nous des bibliographies obscures que personne d'autre que vous ne semble connaître, signalez-nous les erreurs et les omissions que vous trouvez dans ce que nous avons publié. D'autre part, si la portée de la bibliographie ne vous semble pas adéquate ou que l'organization des données ne vous rend par service, dites-le en suggérant des moyens de mieux vous aider.

Malgré les développements technologiques qui peuvent souvent faire oublier l'essentiel, j'ai *toujours* eu conscience que ma profession en était tout d'abord une de *service,* quoi qu'en disent certains tenants de théories soit disant plus modernes. Donnez ainsi à RETRO la chance de vous servir de mieux en mieux.

RÉFÉRENCES

1 Conférence nationale sur l'état de la bibliographie au Canada, Vancouver, C.-B., 1974. *Comptes rendus.* Ottawa: Bibliothèque nationale du Canada, 1977. p. 503.
2 *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographies: la bibliographie nationale du Canada: édition sur microfiche: (une introduction). Ottawa:* Bibliothèque nationale du Canada, 1980. ISBN 0-662-50823-8. No de catalogue du MAS: SN2-2/1900-M-1. Cette introduction est distribué gratuitement, à qui en fait demande, par la Division de la bibliographie nationale rétrospective, Bibliothèque nationale du Canada, Ottawa, Ont. K1A 0N4. Le texte apparaît aussi au début de l'édition sur microfiche.
3 *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographies: la bibliographie nationale du Canada: édition sur microfiche.* Ottawa: Bibliothèque nationale du Canada, 1980- ISBN 0660-50465-0. Voir la section 5 pour les détails relatifs à la commande.

THE CANADIAN INSTITUTE FOR HISTORICAL MICROREPRODUCTIONS: OBJECTIVES - METHODOLOGIES

ERNEST B. INGLES, *Executive Director*
and ROBERT MONTAGUE, *Supervisor, Bibliographic Research Group,*
Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions
Suite 200, 331 Cooper Street, Ottawa, Ontario K2P 0G5

THIS PAPER summarizes the objectives and methodologies of the Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions, an agency created in 1978 by the Canada Council for the purpose of identifying and locating pre-1900 printed Canadiana, preserving the intellectual content of these materials by reproducing them on microfiche, and distributing the resulting collection, accompanied by suitable bibliographic support, to libraries, archives and researchers inside and outside of Canada. As the purpose of this conference is the examination of present trends and future needs in the field of Canadian bibliography, special attention will be given to outlining the Institute's bibliographical research activities. In order to clarify the scope of this research an attempt will also be made to explain the various other facets of the Institute's operations.

Before detailing the work of the Institute, it must be stressed that its activities should be viewed within the context of a national and international concern for the conservation of printed materials on paper. In Canada there is legitimate anxiety that the academic and research libraries will be unable to preserve in the original, hard-copy format their holdings of pre-1950 materials, or a significant part of those holdings, much beyond the early decades of the twenty-first century. Despite the advances in conservation technology the amount of material is too vast, the number of skilled craftsmen too few, the design of present library buildings too inappropriate, and the present and projected commitment in manpower and material too minimal, for remedial conservation activities.

Clearly, if the problem is to be addressed in a responsible manner, a national strategy for preservation must be instituted. Planning for such a program is presently underway by the National Library of Canada.[1] An integral part of any such plan will be the transfer of the intellectual content of retrospective materials to alternate text storage or text transmittal systems. Microforms will play an important part in such a program.

It was with this in mind that the Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions was created. While established preliminary to, and independent of, a national preservation strategy, it is the first and a most important step in assuring the preservation of Canada's retrospective printed heritage.

The Institute traces its origins to the Report of the Commission on Canadian Studies, entitled *To Know Ourselves,* and prepared by Professor T.H.B. Symons. The Report, published in 1975, discussed the state of teaching and research in various fields of study relating to Canada at Canadian universities. While the first and second volumes of the Report did not deal in detail with the state of library holdings necessary for Canadian studies, there was comment on the unevenness of resources across the country and the lack of collections to support research in a number of disciplines. Symons also drew attention to major weaknesses in library holdings of 18th, 19th and early 20th century printed materials. The Canada Council responded to this concern and convened a small group of librarians and scholars to report to the Council on the most pressing problems facing university research libraries and to advise the Council on the most appropriate ways to alleviate these problems, with specific attention being paid to the question of the strengthening of research collections in the humanities and the social sciences. In dealing with the problem of retrospective Canadiana, the consultative group expressed grave concern over the lack of materials in a large number of research libraries. Moreover they found that, even in those regions boasting collections of Canadiana, long term access could not be guaranteed because the materials were rapidly deteriorating not only through aging but through heavy use. In reporting the recommendations of the group, the Chairman, Dr. Hans Möller, commented:

> One striking and, to us, important characteristic of research collections in universities across the country which immediately came to light was their weakness in Canadian materials. Collections of Canadiana are poor at most libraries and incomplete overall. A great deal of Canadiana is not preserved anywhere within the country.[2]

On the matter of conservation, he stated:

> . . . Not only is it difficult to obtain access to Canadiana, but books are rapidly deteriorating . . . We are faced with the alarming prospect that students in future generations will have very little early Canadian material to study, unless some large and constructive measures are taken immediately.[3]

To combat these problems the Council, acting on the recommendations of the consultative group and the initiative of Frank Milligan, Hans Möller, David Esplin and Ramsay Cook, established the Institute in 1978 as an independent, non-profit corporation whose objectives would be:

- to improve access to printed Canadiana already in the country;
- to make Canadiana not now in Canada available to Canadian researchers;
- to make rare and scarce Canadiana more widely available;
- to bring together fragmented collections of Canadiana;
- to ensure the preservation of Canadiana in Canada and elsewhere.

Today, three interconnecting operational units, reflecting the Institute's primary directives and work flow, make up its administrative structure. (See Figure 1.)

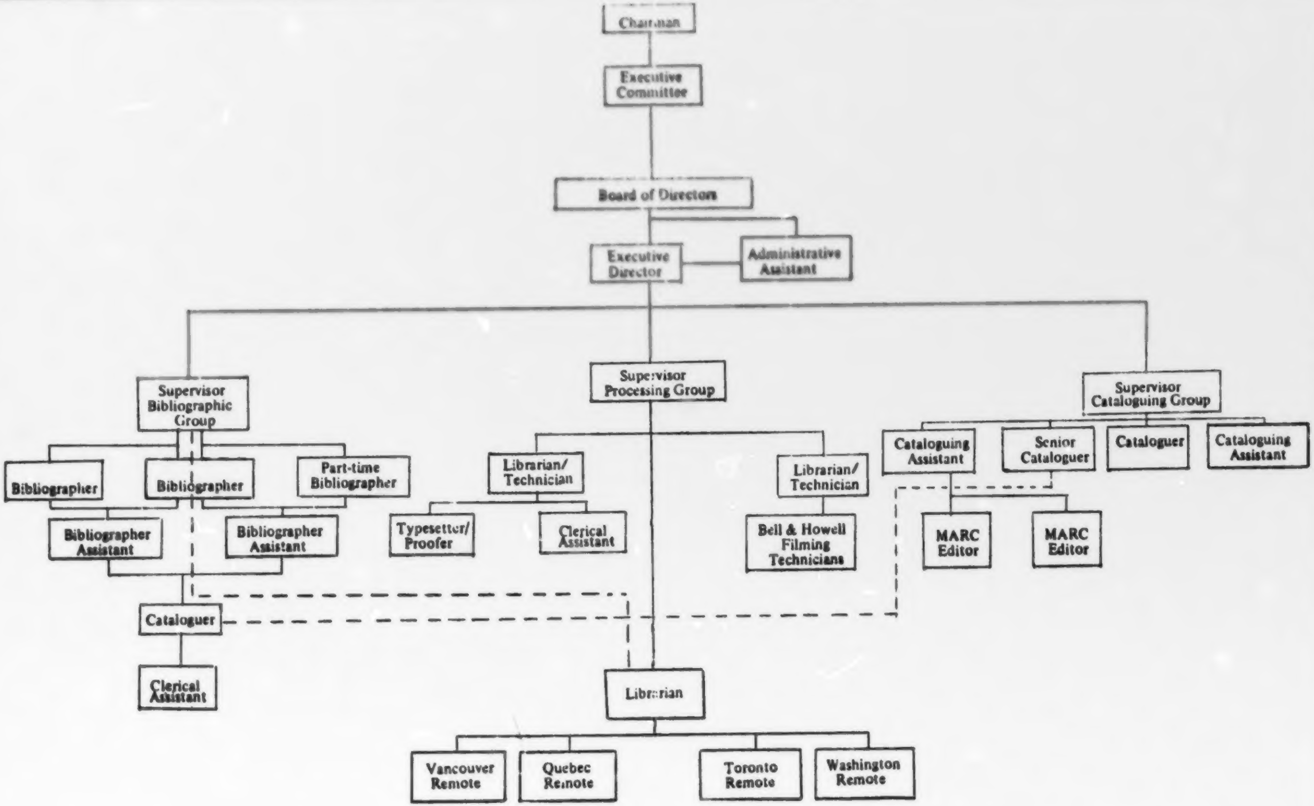

Chairman
Executive Committee
Board of Directors
Executive Director
Administrative Assistant
Supervisor Bibliographic Group
Supervisor Processing Group
Supervisor Cataloguing Group
Bibliographer
Bibliographer
Part-time Bibliographer
Bibliographer Assistant
Bibliographer Assistant
Cataloguer
Clerical Assistant
Librarian/ Technician
Typesetter/ Proofer
Clerical Assistant
Librarian/ Technician
Bell & Howell Filming Technicians
Librarian
Vancouver Remote
Quebec Remote
Toronto Remote
Washington Remote
Cataloguing Assistant
Senior Cataloguer
Cataloguer
Cataloguing Assistant
MARC Editor
MARC Editor

FIGURE 1. Organization Chart of the Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions

These are: Bibliographic Research Group; Processing Group; and Cataloguing Group. Of these three the work of the first and the last are of particular interest to this Conference.

Let us begin with the bibliographic researchers. The function of the Bibliographic Research Group is to compile a listing of Canadiana published up to 1900 inclusive. In developing this Master Bibliographic File, the unit is expected: to cooperate with bibliographic projects already in progress; to explore ways of gathering data from repositories with relevant holdings; and to liaise with scholars and librarians so as to serve as a clearinghouse of bibliographical information.

In a project of this magnitude and complexity two concerns dominated. Firstly, because of the Institute's intention to locate and to film the best and most complete copy of the titles identified, procedures had to be developed for gathering and matching records from many different libraries. The need to base a methodology on the physical examination of each item was quickly demonstrated, and an approach, based in large measure on the experience of the Eighteenth Century Short Title Catalogue (ESTC) Project, was adopted.[4] Secondly, the principles governing the creation of bibliographic files and the description of individual entries had to be formulated on the need to reveal, in an historically meaningful order, the sequences of an author's work.

As to the scope and content of the file, it should be stated that attempts to record all printed material, whether letterpress or engraved, while sound in principle have rarely proved feasible in practice. The creators of most retrospective bibliography projects, while often originally committed to the idea of inclusivity, have usually been obliged to settle for a more practical definition of the material they recorded. Bibliographers have to balance content parameters against broader requirements. It seems injudicious, for example, to exclude all material deemed ephemeral in view of the fact that some very important literary/historical/sociological texts first appeared in an ephemeral format. Yet many scholars would admit the necessity of excluding items of virtually negligible significance, such as blank forms and tickets (although, even here you would find staunch defenders of the importance of such documentation).

The chronological scope of the file is clear; its geographical scope includes:

- all relevant items printed in Canada;
- all relevant items printed outside Canada and written by Canadians;
- all relevant items of Canadian implication published outside Canada.

The following categories of materials will be included:

- monographs, pamphlets, leaflets, playbills and broadsides; catalogues of books, pictures, articles for sale or commercial products;
- separates which are not detached articles, advertisements for services, products or entertainments;
- reports of annual meetings;
- publications of municipal and county governments;
- non-Canadian government monographs with Canadian content, particularly if unobtainable in Canada.

Exclusions are: Canadian federal, provincial and territorial government publications; journals and newspapers; manuscript materials; engraved materials such as maps and prints (unless they are part of a printed work); currency; topographical views and prints; portraits, caricatures, etc.; printed forms intended to be completed in manuscript, i.e., indentures, warrants etc., trade cards, labels and visiting cards.

Any attempt to compile a bibliography on the basis of printed catalogues and union holdings alone involves the tricky process of matching unknown quantities. The nature and extent of this problem may be illustrated by the difficulties experienced by searchers in using the Union Catalogue of the National Library which was compiled by filing together cards submitted from a wide variety of libraries. Searchers often find duplicate records of the same book turning up in the catalogue, while single records with multiple locations disguise the existence of different bibliographical entities.

Moreover, the architects of modern cataloguing codes have never been able to accommodate adequately within their proposals the fact that books printed by hand, before the widespread use of the machine or power press in the early decades of the nineteenth century, belong to a separate species, and cannot be described according to the rules devised for modern books. Even for a systematic file some alteration in descriptive techniques for older imprints is necessary. In the case of title page data, for instance, many bibliographers would prefer adherence to the original title page with uniformity of description instead of an imposed description of the data elements.

Emphasis on physical description as well as the complexity of items in this early period, combined with the Institute's need for a physical condition report, mean that all descriptions should be constructed from the book in hand. Intellectually significant information often emerges from descriptions of otherwise common items. Only on the basis of examination can editions be defined, reprints identified and variants described.

The construction of records from the book in hand ensures accuracy, obviates much guess-work in dating, reduces or eliminates the difficulties of matching unknown quantities and greatly facilitates the verification of entries. To describe a book's title-page on the basis of the quasi-facsimile method will normally bring together all the necessary details of author, title, printer, publisher and place as well as date of publication. This method is not an infallible guide in distinguishing between founts of type, in recording the size of typographical marks or their relative position on the page. It is essential for the bibliographer to compare actual copies, or at the very least photocopies of title-pages, not only transcriptions, if he/she is to ensure that the very slightest typographical change is to be noticed.

To insist on the transcription of the title-pages of over 55,000 items, with scrupulous attention to wording and punctuation, is to run a considerable risk of error. A less laborious, and more accurate method, involves a photocopy of the title-page (together with other relevant preliminary leaves) with added collation. The advantages of photocopying are several. Errors of transcription are avoided. The laborious process of transcription is eliminated. It is an efficacious method of gathering reliable records from different libraries, and it obviates variations in cataloguing between one repository and another. Since the entire title page is reproduced, no essential data is eliminated, making it easier to construct an accurate, independent unit entry. The use of photocopies goes a long way to mechanize the transcription process and to reduce pressure on professional time.

At the Institute a record package is always used to supplement the information on the title page, to record the collation and to note the presence, in some copies, of half titles, advertisements, errata, etc. Where libraries are unable to supply the Institute with photocopied title pages of their holdings, or when the condition of the book will not permit reproduction, a facsimile title-page form is used to transcribe exactly what is on hand.

Once the methodological model for the identification of relevant titles had been devised, the Institute turned to the problem of data collection. A staged approach is often necessary in putting into practice operational processes. In this manner effectiveness is ensured with minimal disruption, maximizing also internal strengths and external opportunities. To enable the Institute to move ahead with the task of developing its collection, it seemed prudent to incorporate authoritative bibliographic entries taken from other bibliographic research projects or catalogues. Initially the following files were reproduced: The National Library of Canada's *Canadiana 1867-1900: Mongraphs* (also known as "RETRO"), the chronological catalogue of the Thomas Fisher Rare Books Library at the University of Toronto, and the card catalogue of the Canadiana collection at the Metropolitan Toronto Library. These catalogues were microfilmed and the images reproduced back in card form. A Canadiana post-1867 file was created and, as RETRO was the most complete bibliographical source for the period, new entries were verified against this file to avoid duplication and to standardize the headings using RETRO guidelines, broadly based on the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, 1967 (AACR1) and the *International Standard Bibliographic Description for Monographic Publications*, (ISBD(M)). This file was then made available to the Processing Group.[5]

The experience gained from the preparation of this file served to assist the Bibliographic Group in the training of its research staff, the testing of its methodology, the preparation of its procedure manuals, and, the development of a workable form for handling the pre-1867 materials, as well as for describing new titles to be added to the post-1867 file. Once the procedures were in place, editing of the pre-1867 entries began, utilizing for the heading and the bibliographical descriptions the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, 1980, (AACR2), the *International Standard Bibliographic Description for Monographic Publications*, (ISBD(M)), the *International Standard Bibliographic Description for Older Monographic Publications (Antiquarian)*, (ISBD(A)) and the Library of Congress rules: *Bibliographic Description of Rare Books*. At the same time searching and locating potential items for inclusion continued using printed catalogues and bibliographies, as did the photocopying of title-pages in library and archive collections.

Another advantage of the title page evidence in photocopied form is that it allows us continually to re-appraise the data in each bibliographic record. It is only when we put items side by side in our files that we can be sure of spotting variant impressions, issues and states. We simply cannot rely on modern cataloguing codes to reveal in an historically meaningful order the sequences of an author's work or the sequences of editions. In the majority of cases no modification of our AACR2 records is necessary. But there still has to be some flexibility in our system if we are to ensure that every individual record occupies its proper place in the bibliographical sequence.

Once a title has been located, arrangements for its interlibrary loan are made and the title brought to one of the Institute's three camera locations in Canada: Ottawa, Toronto or Vancouver. Where possible, existing library delivery services or courier services are used to transport materials; however, the Institute also operates a courier system which averages over 2,000 kilometres a month. As an indication of the extent of filming operations, in total approximately 8,300 loans for titles were generated in 1980, 77 per cent of which were filmed. 13.7 per cent were not received because they had been withdrawn from library collections. Of the items received 9.3 per cent were not filmed because of fragility, incompleteness or other irregularities.

In preparation for filming each title is examined and target sheets prepared outlining the condition of the copy filmed, and including technical and bibliographic notes to inform the researcher about physical aspects of the original which may affect the microfilm image or which may be of assistance in enabling the researcher to understand peculiarities of the copy filmed. After filming, each book undergoes a rigorous quality and editorial check to make certain it was filmed properly and in its entirety.

After a book has been filmed, proofed and approved, a proof microfiche copy is sent to the Institute's Cataloguing Group. Its function is to catalogue and subject analyze each title in the collection. The cataloguing unit is organizationally independent of, but closely linked to, the Cataloguing Branch of the National Library of Canada. Indeed, the National Library generously provides space for the Cataloguing Group, as well as the Bibliographic Research and Processing Groups. This link was formalized in March 1980 when the agencies signed a Memorandum of Agreement, the terms of which state that they will cooperate in the cataloguing, creation and distribution of machine-readable bibliographic records for the Institute's collection.

The Institute has, since cataloguing began, used AACR2 as the standard for headings and bibliographic descriptions. Although there is some controversy surrounding the application of the Rules to microform materials, the Institute has followed the code, in general compliance with the National Library's policy.[6] There is one notable exception in that the Institute has chosen to continue to place the original place of publication, publisher and date of publication in the imprint statement, rather than placing the imprint of the Institute as publisher in that field. Description is at AACR2 Second Level, with subject headings assigned using the standard subject heading lists: *Library of Congress Subject Headings, Canadian Subject Headings* and *Répertoire de vedettes-matière*. Each title in the collection receives a Dewey Decimal Classification number, assigned from the 19th edition of Dewey.

The following represent sample catalogue entries:

Adam, G. Mercer (Graeme Mercer), 1839-1912

Illustrated Quebec [microform]: (the Gibraltar and tourists' Mecca of America) under French and English occupancy; the story of its famous annals, with pen pictures descriptive of the matchless beauty and quaint medieval characteristics of the Canadian Gibraltar / by G.M. Adam; with an introduction by Arthur C. Doughty; and supplementary chapters by J.M. Lemoine. - Montreal: J. McConniff, 1891

2 microfiches (62 fr.): ill. - (CIHM/ICMH microfiche series; no. 00772)

At head of title: 1535-1608: 1763-1893.

Includes list of illustrations.

Filmed from a copy of the original publication held by Public Archives of Canada Library. Ottawa: Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions, 1979.

ISBN 0-665-00772-8

1. Québec (Quebec) - Description. 2. Québec (Quebec) - History. 1. Québec (Québec) - Descriptions. 2. Québec (Québec) - Histoire.

I. Title. II. Series: CIHM/ICMH microfiche series; no. 00772.

917.14471

Campbell, Wilfred, 1861-1918

Mordred ·· and ·· Hildebrand [microform]: a book of tragedies / by William Wildred Campbell. - Ottawa: J. Durie, 1895.

2 microfiches (94 fr.). - (CIHM/ICMH microfiche series; no. 00411)

Contents: Mordred, a tragedy in five acts, founded on the Arthurian legend of Sir Thomas Mallory - Hildebrand, an historical tragedy, founded on the life and character of the great Pope Gregory VII . . .

Filmed from a copy of the original publication held by National Library of Canada. Ottawa: Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions, 1980.

ISBN 0-665-00411-7

I. Title. II. Mordred, a tragedy in five acts. III. Title: Hildebrand, an historical tragedy. IV. Series: CIHM/ICMH microfiche series; no. 00411.

C812.4

Bourlamaque, François-Charles de, 1716-1764

Lettres de M. de Bourlamaque au chevalier de Lévis [microform] / publiés sous la direction de l'abbé H.-R. Casgrain. - [Québec? : s.n.], 1891 (Québec: L.-J. Demeres).

4 microfiches (193 images). - (CIHM/ICMH série en microfiche; no. 00213)

L'original publié dans la collection: Collection des manuscrits du maréchal de Lévis; [v. 51]

Faux-titre: Lettres de M. de Bourlamaque au maréchal de Lévis

Sommaire: Lettres de M. Bourlamaque au chevalier à Lévis - Lettres de marquis de Montcalm à M. de Bourlamaque.

Microfiche de l'exemplaire de l'édition originale se trouvant à la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada. Ottawa: Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques, 1980.

ISBN 0-665-00213-0

1. Canada - History - 1755- 1763. 2. United States - History - French and English War, 1755-1763. 1. Canada - Histoire - 1755-1763. 2. Etats-Unis - Histoire - 1755-1763 (Guerre franco-indienne).

I. Casgrain, H.-R. (Henri-Raymond), 1831-1904. II. Titre. III. Titre: Lettres de M. de Bourlamaque au maréchal de Lévis. IV. Collection: CIHM/ICMH série en microfiche; no. 00213. V. Collection des manuscrits de maréchal de Lévis; v.5.

971.01

Cataloguing data will be made available to subscribing libraries on magnetic tape, generated in CAN/MARC format by the National Library but distributed by the Institute; or selected records can be ordered through the MARC Records Distribution Service of the National Library on the same general terms and in the same format as for other options of that Service. In addition, the records will be made available through the University of Toronto Library Automation Systems (UTLAS).

The Institute will also publish, at least annually, a Computer-Output-Microform (COM) Catalogue of the collection. While the format of the Catalogue has not yet been finalized it will resemble both the National Library's *Canadiana on Microfiche* and *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographs* on microfiche, utilizing a random register format with the following indices:

author/title index
english subject headings index
french subject headings index
Dewey Classification index
chronological index
imprint indices
CIHM no. index

Such multiplicity of access will be reflected in the book catalogue envisioned by the Institute at the conclusion of the project. With such bibliographic and subject access, these catalogues should be major reference and bibliographic tools, independent of their purpose in accessing the collection.

In conclusion, it should be stressed that the prime mandate of the Institute is to preserve the intellectual content of pre-1900 printed Canadiana. In fulfilling this mandate it should contribute to Canadian Studies generally, by facilitating access to these texts. It should also contribute to Canadian Bibliography by supplementing the excellent retrospective bibliographic work being done by the National Library of Canada, the Bibliothèque nationale du Québec and the many individual bibliographers whose work has and will continue to expand Canada's bibliographical knowledge.

REFERENCES

1 Hillman, M. "A National Preservation Program for Library Materials in Canada" Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1980, pp. iv-vi. (Xerox.)

2 *University Research Libraries: Report of the Consultative Group on University Research Libraries.* Ottawa: The Canada Council, 1978, p.1.

3 *Ibid.*, p.25.

4 See R.C. Alston and M.J. Jannetta. *Bibliography, Machine Readable Cataloguing and the ESTC*
London: The British Library, 1978.

5 In making the decision to accept the practices of RETRO for the form of heading, (the alternative to which meant reformulating headings for nearly 37,000 entries) certain processing problems were created. As indicated, from the outset of production in November 1979, the Institute used the RETRO file as its form of heading authority. This data was then used to develop a truncated eye-legible microfiche header as a tag to identify the filmed document. However, by using the RETRO heading, (developed using criteria based on AACR1) the Institute header and the main heading on the final cataloguing record frequently differed in form. Where differences occurred (55% were unchanged) the majority were a matter of form and formatting (38%) rather than of content. In some cases, particularly certain examples of pseudonymous authorship, corporate authorship or editorship, the differences could lead to confusion (7%). Steps have been taken to minimize the incidence of difference for post-1867 materials and changes have been made in policies and procedures to insure that this should not be a problem for pre-1867 titles.

6 "National Library Statement on Cataloguing of Microforms." *National Library News* (January-February 1981): 1.

VI

RESOURCE COLLECTIONS ABROAD AND ACCESS TO THEM

BIBLIOGRAPHIC RESOURCES FOR CANADIAN STUDIES IN AUSTRALIA: SEARCHING FOR PINE NEEDLES AMONG THE LEAVES

PETER CRABB
Senior Lecturer in Geography, School of Earth Sciences
and *Chairman* Canadian Studies Committee
Macquarie University
North Ryde, New South Wales 2113, Australia

RECENT YEARS have seen a vast expansion of library facilities and collections in Australia.[1] In this and many other respects, the Australian library system is very similar to that of Canada.[2] With some important exceptions, however, to which we will come shortly, collections of Canadian material are limited in scope, even more limited in depth, and not organised as Canadian collections. One has to work through the general catalogues, largely dependent on the detail and accuracy of the subject indexes. Further, the published guides to library collections are limited in number, and contain relatively few specific references to Canada, and when they do, they are not very helpful. For example, a recent publication on libraries in Australia and New Zealand contains just a few lines on Canada and these are incomplete and inaccurate.[3] The only document of significance on Australia's library resources is now twenty years old and very out of date.[4] Nothing comparable has been compiled since, and there is no work similar to Ash's survey of North American libraries.[5] In other words, the situation is comparable with that of Australian material in most Canadian libraries!

All Australian libraries are constrained by inadequate funding. In an effort to make funds go further, groups of libraries are agreeing to specialise in certain areas. Thus local government libraries in the Sydney metropolitan area operate a scheme of subject specialisation: for example, Auburn specialises in North American history and geography and Ryde in North American literature.[6] In the Melbourne area, Kew municipal library specialises in material on North American Indians.[7] In New South Wales, the university libraries have a scheme of regional or country specialisation, but Canada is not one of the countries included, which means that material is collected by all libraries and hence there is no concentrated collection.[8] The three university libraries in Melbourne have a co-operative arrangement for collecting Commonwealth literature, and La Trobe has a blanket order for all Canadian literature, both English and French language.[9]

In a recent listing of Australian academic libraries, La Trobe University was the only one that indicated a particular strength in Canadian Studies.[10] La Trobe's Canadian collection goes well beyond literature, covering many disciplines, especially in the social sciences, with a major collection of both historical and current government documents, having been a selective depository for Federal Government publications since 1970. While most university libraries have only small listings of Canadian material, it would be wrong to think that La Trobe was the only academic library with a significant Canadian collection. Worth noting are Queensland (history and literature), New England (French-language literature), Sydney (history, law, and some 1,500 volumes of English-language literature), and the Australian National University. Special collections are associated with the Centre for Research on Federal Financial Relations at the Australian National University and the Centre for Research in the New Literature in English at Flinders University.

Some years ago, both Macquarie and La Trobe University libraries received major donations of books from the Canadian Government, each receiving over 500 volumes in the five years from 1971. Since then, like other university libraries with an expressed interest in Canada, Macquarie has received further important donations of books, journals, maps and audio-visual material from the Canadian Government and the Canada Council. These donations – totalling over 1,700 books alone – form the basis of a substantial Canadian collection of over 3,800 volumes, to which the library has devoted an important share of its own resources. The main strengths of the collection are in English and French Canadian literature, history, geography, economics and law. In 1978, the Library prepared a brief introduction to its Canadian resources.[11]

As regards specialist libraries, little relevant information is available. There are small libraries of Canadian material at the High Commission in Canberra and the Consulates in Sydney and Melbourne, their main value being basic reference material and current newspapers and magazines.[12] Libraries associated with government departments and utilities and the various divisions of the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation (CSIRO) carry appropriate Canadian material.

The state libraries constitute a very important part of the Australian library system. In many respects, they are comparable to major government libraries. Most if not all contain significant Canadian collections, while until budgetary cuts were imposed in the late 1970s, at least a number of them (e.g. New South Wales and Queensland) were selective depository libraries for Canadian government material. By way of illustration, the New South Wales State Library has over 4,000 cards in the Canada section of the main index of the General Reference Library. An important research arm of the State Library is the Mitchell Library, which houses books, documents and manuscripts, essentially Australian but including some Canadian material and items dealing with Australia's links with Canada.[13] Little or nothing is known of material in manuscript and archival collections in Australia,[14] but it would be surprising if their investigation yielded nothing of value to Canadian Studies.

Of most importance overall in the Australian library system and in terms of Canadian material is the National Library of Australia located in Canberra.[15] It has a major Canadian collection, particularly strong in the social sciences, humanities (including literature), law, and government documents and publications.[16] Up to 1979, the collection consisted of over 14,900 books and pamphlets and over 3,500 newspapers and journals. It covers both English and French language material, while recently a start has been made on obtaining Canadian publications in other languages (e.g. Latvian and other East European languages), mainly in response to demands from the same language migrant groups in Australia. Much of the collection is of this century, but efforts continue to be made to obtain earlier publications and documents.[17] Over recent years, much material - both new and old - has been obtained in microfilm and microfiche form.[18] The Library has been a more or less full depository for Canadian government publications since 1963 (including those of many government agencies, such as the Economic Council of Canada); it has an exchange agreement with the National Library of Canada covering both government and commercial publications; and it has exchange agreements for serials with a number of Canadian universities. As well as receiving Canadian material by exchanges and donations (notably from the Canadian government), the Library also gives high priority to Canada in terms of its own purchases.[19] To ensure the supply of current Canadian publishing, it has a comprehensive General Order with a Canadian bookseller and so receives all but minor local publications in its main areas of interest as well as some in the sciences.[20] Where the collection is not so strong is in terms of provincial and local material. The Library also houses Australia's largest map collection which includes nearly 17,000 Canadian maps (as of 1979),[21] with a virtually complete collection of topographic maps published by the Department of Energy, Mines and Resources since 1950. Among its many other Canadian maps, both recent and historical, are a number of Captain James Cook's maps of Newfoundland published in the latter part of the eighteenth century.

Published guides to Australian library collections are still relatively few, though the situation is improving.[33] Here again, the National Library plays a key role, having published a number of important general guides, for example, to serials,[23] monographs,[24] and newspapers,[25] as well as an overall guide to the cataloguing system.[26] The Library is in the process of publishing a multi-volume guide to its own collection, of which the first three volumes have been published.[27] These contain references to parts of the Library's Canadian collection. Also of great value is the Library's monthly publication listing Australian newspaper, magazine and journal articles by subject.[28] There have also been a small number of publications specifically concerned with Canadian material, including a guide to Canadian legal material[29] and listings of recent acquisitions of both French and English material - though these can hardly be called guides to the collection, they provide an indication of its content and scope.[30] Two guides have been prepared at La Trobe University covering North American research materials in Melbourne's major libraries,[31] but nothing comparable exists for the main libraries in Australia's other capital cities.

Many Canadian bibliographic tools are available in Australian libraries, covering both English and French language material. For example, Macquarie University Library regularly receives *Canadiana,*[32] and among its collection of bibliographies are ones covering history,[33] literature,[34] historical government records,[35] Quebec affairs,[36] reference sources,[37] and so on. Such tools are certainly of value in helping to identify relevant material in both research and teaching situations. The next step is to go to the main catalogue of one's library, where one often comes to a halt! If inter-library loan is not a possibility, one tries direct contact with Canada, or waits until the next visit. As a result, most Canadianists have their own specialist libraries.

Recent years have seen a substantial growth in the bibliographic resources for Canadian Studies in Australia. There are no difficulties in obtaining access to material once it has been discovered what is available and where it is located. More material resources are certainly needed – books, journals, newspapers, maps, and so on. We also need better information on what is available from federal and provincial government sources (some departments and provinces are more helpful than others)[38] and also from commercial publishers. It is often difficult to find out what is being published, in part at least due to inadequate publicity in Australia by Canadian publishers and/or their Australian agents.[39] At the present time, however, as well as adding to Canadian collections, it is perhaps more important that we identify and detail the resources that are available in Australia. Such information would greatly facilitate the continuing search for pine needles among the gum leaves!

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I am indebted to Mr. Eoin Wilkinson, University Librarian at Macquarie, and Mrs. Judy Campbell, Acquisitions Librarian, for their assistance in the preparation of this paper. Most of all, I must thank Miss Jocelyn Gardner, without whose help my task would have been impossible and this paper could not have been written. The author alone is responsible for the paper's limitations.

REFERENCES

1 Bryan, H.; and McGreal, R.M. *The Pattern of Library Services in Australia.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1972.

Balnaves, J.; and Biskup, P. *Australian Libraries.* London: Clive Bingley, 1975.

Horton, A. et al. *Public Libraries in Australia.* Report of the Committee of Inquiry into Public Libraries. Canberra: Australian Government Publishing Service, 1976.

2 Bryan, H.; and Greenwood, G., eds. *Design for Diversity: library services for higher education and research in Australia.* St. Lucia: University of Queensland Press, 1977.

3 Downs, R.B. *Australia and New Zealand Library Resources.* London: Mansell Publishing, 1979, p. 50.

4 Tauber, M.F. *Resources of Australian Libraries.* 3 vols. Canberra: Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographic Services, 1962.

5 Ash, L. *Subject Collections: a guide to special book collections and subject emphases as reported by university, college, public and special libraries and museums in the United States and Canada.* New York: R.P.. Bowker Co., 1974.

6 Bundy, A.L., ed. *Libraries of Sydney.* Melbourne: Footscray Institute of Technology, 1977.

7 Bundy, A.L. et al. *Libraries of Melbourne.* Melbourne: Footscray Institute of Technology, 1977.

8 Bryan, H. "The New South Wales area collecting project." *Australian Library Journal* 19 (1970): 312-317.

9 *La Trobe University Library News* (1975):24.

10 Bundy, A.L., ed. *Directory of Australian Academic Libraries.* Melbourne: Footscray Institute of Techology, 1978

11 *Some Resources for Canadian Studies held by Macquarie University Library.* North Ryde: Macquarie University Library, n.d. (1978).

12 Wicks, V.M. *Directory of Special Libraries in Australia.* Sydney: Library Association of Australia, 1976.

13 *The State Library of New South Wales: introduction and history.* Sydney: n.p., 1980.

State Library of New South Wales: Mitchell and Dixson Libraries. Sydney: n.p., n.d. (1980).

14 *Principal Manuscript Collections in the National Library of Australia.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1978.

15 Baskin, J. "The National Library of Australia." *Australian Library Journal* 28 (1979): 196-199.

16 *National Library of Australia: Sixteenth Annual Report 1975-76.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1976, p. 25.

17 *National Library of Australia: Ninth Annual Report 1968-69.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1969, p. 10.

18 *National Library of Australia: Seventeenth Annual Report 1976-77.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1977, p. 33.

19 *National Library of Australia: Twentieth Annual Report 1979-80.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1980, p. 63.

20 *Australian National Library Acquisitions Newsletter* 18 (1973): 11.

21 Rauchle, N.M., ed. *Map Collections in Australia: a directory.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1980.

22 Borchardt, D.H. *Australian Bibliography: a guide to printed sources of information.* Sydney: Pergamon Press, 1976.

23 *Serials in Australian Libraries: Social Sciences and Humanities: a union list (SALSSAH).* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1978.

Scientific Serials in Australian Libraries. Edited by J.A. Conochie. Melbourne: CSIRO, 1976.

24 *National Union Catalogue of Monographs (NUCOM).* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1976.

25 *Newspapers in Australian Libraries: a union list. Part I: Overseas Newspapers.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1973.

26 *Guide to the National Union Catalogue of Australia.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1978.

27 Burmester, C.A. *National Library of Australia: guide to the collections.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, vol. 1 (1974), 2 (1977), 3 (1980), and 4 (in preparation).

28 *APAIS: Australian Public Affairs Information Service: a subject index to current literature.* Canberra: National Library of Australia.

29 *Canadian Legal Materials held by the National Library, February* 1980. Microfiche. ANSOL Bibliography Series No. 4. Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1980. This list contains some 700 entries for monographs, periodicals, statutes, reports, etc.

30 *Canada: Le Canada Français. Les nouvelles publications dans la Bibliothèque Nationale d'Australie.* Australian International and Ethnic Library (AUSINTEL) Current Awareness Bulletin No. IE18. Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1979.

Canada: books in French. Australian International and Ethnic Library (AUSINTEL) Current Awareness Bulletin No. IE65. Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1979.

Canada. Australian International and Ethnic Library (AUSINTEL) Current Awareness Bulletin No. IE46. Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1979.

31 Breen, W.J. *Guide to Research Materials Related to American Studies in Melbourne.* Melbourne: Department of History, La Trobe University, 1970.

Choate, R. *North American Studies: a bibliography of reference materials relevant to the study of the United States and Canada.* Bundoora: La Trobe University Library, 1972.

Shultz, R.J.; and Schultz, J.F. "Historians and non-Australian bibliographic research aids in Australia". In *Twelve Essays on Australian Subject Bibliography,* pp. 31-38. Edited by D.H. Borchardt. Networks Study No. 12. Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1980.

32 *Canadiana.* Ottawa: National Library of Canada, 1950- .

33 Granatstein, J.L.; and Stevens, Paul. *Canada Since 1867: a bibliographic guide.* Toronto: A.M. Hakkert Ltd., 1974.

34 Fee, Margery; and Cawker, Ruth. *Canadian Fiction: an annotated bibliography.* Toronto: Peter Martin Associates, 1976.

Gnarowski, Michael. *A Concise Bibliography of English-Canadian Literature.* Rev. ed. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart, 1978.

35 Cook, T.; and Wright, G.T. *Historical Records of the Government of Canada 1981.* Ottawa: Public Archives Canada, Supply and Services Canada, 1980.

36 Boily, R. *Québec 1940-1969 Bibliographie: le système politique Québécois et son environnement.* Montréal: les Presses de l'université du Montréal, 1971.

Richer, J. *Catalogue de l'édition au Canada français 1970-71.* Montreal: Le Conseil Supérieur du Livre, 1970.

37 Ryder, Dorothy E. *Canadian Reference Sources: a selective guide.* Ottawa: Canadian Library Association, 1973. *Supplement,* 1975.

Fulford, R. et al., eds. *Read Canadian: a book about Canadian books.* Toronto: James Lewis and Samuel, 1972.

Canadian Books in Print: author and title index 1977. Edited by M. Pluscauskas. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1978.

38 Swartz L.J.; and Shearer, B.F. "Canadian collections in the United States." *Government Publications Review* 6 (1979): 383-399.

39 A valuable exception is the following, though how widely it is distributed in Australia is not known: *Canadian Studies 1981: a catalogue of publications.* Toronto: Canadian Book Publishers Council, 1981.

A VIEW FROM DENMARK

JØRN CARLSEN
Department of English, University of Aarhus
8000 Aarhus C, Denmark

As a student of Canadian literature and culture I am happy to have been given the opportunity to participate in this conference on Canadian bibliography. To carry out Canadian studies abroad without the work of Canadian compilers of bibliographies would have been outright impossible. Being far away from Canadian libraries and collections and, on the whole, the raw material of our teaching and research makes you very dependent on good bibliographies. More than many others we come to appreciate and admire the gigantic effort laid down in these works.

Of course we rely heavily on good library facilities. Our University Library has a fairly moderate collection of Canadiana listed in the subject catalogue under "North America." Our best tool is the Department of English Library where you will find a Canadian section including not only literature and criticism, but also history, economics, political science, etc. The Canadian section was established in the late sixties as one among other Commonwealth sections in suport of teaching and research in Commonwealth studies. Our own purchases over the years and generous book donations from the Canadian government have resulted in a fine collection which is essential to our present teaching of Canadian literature and to the area study of Canada which is just about to materialize.

However, if Canadian scholars want to study, for example, the image of Canada as it was presented to the Danish public and the numerous Danish emigrants to Canada in the 1920s, they will not only run into a language problem, but also into the lack of bibliographies. Numerous books and articles have been written in Danish about Canada; unfortunately, what could be called "Danish Canadiana" has not yet been the subject of compilers of bibliographies. Nor do we find bibliographies compiled with a Canadian perspective in mind when it comes to, for example, Danish explorer Jens Munk and Danish arctic explorer Knud Rasmussen. Bibliographical work in the above-mentioned Danish-Canadian areas will certainly contribute to Canadian bibliography as such.

SUGGESTIONS POUR UNE RELATION DE RECIPROCITE ENTRE LES SERVICES DE DOCUMENTATION CANADIENS ET FRANÇAIS

PIERRE GEORGE
Président de l'Association française d'études canadiennes
Académie des sciences morales et politiques
Université de Paris I
92290 Chatenay-Malabry, France

LES RELATIONS entre services de documentation canadiens et français peuvent être envisagées sur le plan de la réciprocité, en considération des besoins des chercheurs des deux pays.

Dans le cadre des études canadiennes en France, les besoins peuvent être répartis entre trois thèmes sectoriels:

1° *pour l'enseignement,* la connaissance des "nouveautés" paraissant au Canada et concernant la littérature, les sciences sociales, l'économie et les sciences politiques, l'historie, la géographie, la démographie . . . tous ouvrages ou publications périodiques susceptibles d'être acquis pour la mise à jour des cours et conférences concernant le Canada;

2° *pour les chercheurs* appelés à se rendre au Canada pour recueillir l'information qui leur est nécessaire, l'indication de la localisation des fonds de livres et archives intéressant les divers domaines précédemment cités, de manière à orienter utilement la domiciliation des chercheurs au Canada, suivant la nature de leurs objets de travail;

3° *pour les directeurs de recherche* ayant charge de recommander des sujets de recherche aux etudiants post-gradués, et afin d'éviter les doubles emplois et les recoupements de recherches, la connaissance des travaux en cours dirigés dans les diverses Universités canadiennes ou entrepris à l'étranger avec l'accord des Universités et centres de recherche canadiens.

Pratiquement, il s'agit:

1° d'un répertoire bibliographique sélectif, analytique et critique des travaux essentiels et des publications récentes contenant eux-mêmes des références bibliographiques. Ce répertoire (auteurs et titres) pourrait avantageusement être coordonné avec un répertoire par "matières" reposant sur un thesaurus de mots-clés, de noms de personnes et de lieux, permettant d'ordonnancer les commandes ou de préparer les campagnes de consultation en bibliothèque;

2° d'un répertoire des grandes collections de référence du type de la bibliographie du Québec, couvrant les divers fonds accessibles, des collections de microfilms ou des possibilités de faire microfilmer des extraits d'ouvrages ou des articles de revue, ce répertoire comportant indication des lieux de conservation et de reproduction éventuelle des documents;

3° d'un fichier des travaux de recherche entrepris au Canada et hors du Canada sur des sujets canadiens; ce fichier pourrait être établi avec la collaboration de l'Association internationale des études canadiennes pour tout ce qui concerne les travaux realisés hors du Canada.

En contre partie, que peut offrir la France à des chercheurs canadiens ou français s'intéressant à des sujets canadiens dans le cadre des différentes disciplines citées précédemment?

1° les fichiers "matières" et "auteurs" des grandes bibliothèques conservant ouvrages et revues françaises et étrangères: ***Bibliothèque nationale, Bibliothèque Mazarine, Bibliothèque Sainte-Geneviève*** à Paris; les fichiers et collections de divers centres spécialisés: ***Fondation nationale des sciences politiques*** pour tout ce qui concerne l'histoire, la géographie, l'économie, le droit, les sciences sociales et politiques; ***Institut national d'études démographiques*** pour les sujets relatifs aux problèmes de population au sens le plus large du terme; ***Centre de documentation géographique et cartographique*** du ***Centre national de la recherche scientifique;*** d'une manière générale les diverses collections du bulletin analytique et des bibliographies du ***Centre national de la recherche scientifique;***

2° les archives, collections d'imprimés et de cartes conservées aux *Archives nationales* et a la ***Bibliothèque nationale,*** dépositaire des collections de la ***Société de géographie de Paris,*** qui couvrent un siècle de publications, de mémoires inédits et de cartes remontant au XVIIIe et au XVIIe siècle, spécialement sur le Québec;

3° le fichier des thèses entreprises par des étudiants français ou étrangers dans des Universités françaises au titre du troisième cycle ou du doctorat d'Etat. Les sujets déposés sont inscrits à l'actif de l'Université où l'auteur s'est fait inscrire et où il a soutenu ou sera appelé à soutenir sa thèse. Les thèses soutenues sont déposées à la bibliothèque de l'Université où a eu lieu la soutenance. Les thèses imprimées sont déposées à la Bibliothèque nationale en même temps qu'à l'Université de rattachement. Le fichier des thèses inscrites est tenu par l'Université de Paris X - Nanterre.

RESOURCE COLLECTIONS IN THE UNITED KINGDOM

DONALD SIMPSON
Librarian & Director of Studies
Royal Commonwealth Society
18 Northumberland Avenue
London, WC2N 5BJ

As a member of the British Association for Canadian Studies Council I would like to reiterate our thanks to the ACS and others involved in these gatherings for the warmth of our welcome and the constructive atmosphere we have found.

As Librarian of the Royal Commonwealth Society it has been particularly gratifying to me to meet again a number of eminent scholars and librarians who have used and valued our library in the past for its resources in Canadian materials, and indeed in all countries of the Commonwealth. This is heartening at a time when the present economic problems of the UK - not of course unique to the UK - are threatening the future of the Library, which is a privately financed institution.

The Library is about to receive - temporarily at least - the papers of our late and greatly missed President, Malcolm McDonald, not only a Commonwealth figure of outstanding distinction but a notable war time British High Commissioner in Canada where, I may add, he found a Canadian wife.

My main task, however, is to say something about library resources in the UK and more particularly moves towards greater co-operation in their recording and use. In recent years there has been much progress in the study of Canada at various levels in the UK and the Canadian Government has taken an active part in promoting it. 1975 saw the establishment of the Centre for Canadian Studies in Edinburgh, followed by Regional Study Centres at Leeds (1979) and Birmingham (1981). Gifts of selected books have been made to a number of libraries since 1974 (for example, the Royal Commonwealth Society has been the recipient of an annual grant for this purpose) and a number of libraries have benefitted from the deposit of official material. Though the help of the Canadian Government in building up library stocks in this way has unquestionably improved the material available in this country, no library, especially in times of economic pressure, can be completely independent of the resources of others, and interest has been expressed in systematising and extending co-operation.

In 1975 the British Association for Canadian Studies (BACS) was set up, and included amongst its objects "identifying, classifying and publicising the resources in the United Kingdom that are relevant to the study of Canada. it will seek to promote active co-operation with other organisations interested in Canadian studies," and this has been reflected in sessions at its recent Annual Conferences. A great impetus was given by the publication at the end of 1979 of the *Guide to Resources for Canadian Studies in Britain* which the Canadian Department of External Affairs had commissioned Mrs. Valerie Bloomfield to compile. It embodied the results of a survey which began in October 1978 and occupied six months. Preliminary questionnaires were sent to over 300 libraries, museums, archives, companies, official and unofficial bodies and from these 137 were selected as having sufficient material on Canada to merit inclusion in the guide. Mrs. Bloomfield visited 74 of them personally. Consideration was given to limiting the scope of the *Guide* by subject or type of material but "eventually it was decided to regard the survey as a work of exploration, to discover as many different sources as possible and to identify topics requiring further study and investigation. The aim can best be described as comprehensive rather than exhaustive; it is hoped that this initial effort will stimulate the preparation of more specialized guides and bibliographies." The 137 bodies listed include 78 in London, eight in Oxford, seven in Cambridge, 16 in Scotland, three in Wales and one in Northern Ireland.

These include the libraries of universities, government departments, local government authorities, international bodies, business firms, missionary societies and private societies such as the Royal Geographical Society, the Royal Institute of International Affairs and our own Royal Commonwealth Society. The extent of resources identified, if not entirely unexpected, is nevertheless remarkable. The scope was deliberately designed to include non-book materials as well as the more obvious printed sources. A good example is the 8-1/2-page section devoted to the Imperial War Museum which includes photographs, documents, films and sound recordings. It is worth noting the indication the *Guide* gives of the many subjects and types of material contained under the broad heading "Resources for Canadian Studies," often in unexpected places – e.g., material on the Canadian aluminium industry in the Alcan laboratories at Banbury and the important archives in Williams and Glyn's Bank, arising from Glyn Mills and Co.'s activities as joint financial agents to Canadian Governments from 1837 to 1881.

It is tempting to spend more time on describing this guide, which is a model of its kind in both content and lay-out, produced on a scale which permits much more detail to be given than in some more restricted guides of similar character. I hope that some of you will already know it: I recommend others to apply at once to the Academic Relations Division of the Department of External Affairs in Ottawa to see if stocks are still available.

This guide gave impetus to the ideas for increasing library co-operation, already discussed in the Council of the BACS, which then asked me to investigate the possibilities. As a result a small steering group planned a Canadian Librarians' Seminar in cooperation with the Academic Relations Officer, through whose good offices we were able to hold it at Canada House in October 1980. It was attended by seventy individuals representing more than fifty diverse institutions, and its proceedings, with a summary of subsequent developments, are shortly to be published. After discussing matters of common interest, the Seminar set up a Steering Committee which recommended the formation of a liaison body under the auspices of BACS, and this was finally approved at the BACS Annual General Meeting in April this year.

We are now organising the sub-Committee. What are our tasks?

1 Supervision of a supplementary volume by Valerie Bloomfield to cover developments since 1979, and the resources of libraries which were not included, or given inadequate entries, in the first edition. Attention may also be given to such topics as access to computer resources.

2 The regular use of BACS publications, particularly the *Newsletter* and to some extent the *Bulletin*, for news of current developments in library policy and important acquisitions, reviews of bibliographical publications, and other matters of library interest. A report of this conference will no doubt be included, and I hope you will feel free to send us notes of matters which you think would be of value to British libraries or on which we might possibly co-operate. I have in mind, for example, some of the aspects of retrospective bibliography discussed in our last session.

3 Planning the resources sessions in BACS conferences and, if it seems practical, smaller gatherings to meet visiting librarians, etc.

4 Consideration of the possibility of rationalisation of acquisition policies.

5 Assessing possible projects for which funding could be sought, e.g. union lists of periodicals and newspapers or locations of provincial official publications. Here we would obviously take account of the important bibliographical work already done in Canada and try to link records of British holdings to existing bibliographies. We also have in mind lists of British theses on Canadian topics, details of collections of photographs, and co-operation with the Canadian Archives Office in London in any extended programme of finding relevant manuscript material.

I would like to make two general points in conclusion: We want to be practical in the use of what must be limited resources of time available to our Sub-Committee members, and of likely funds, to make sure that the tasks we consider undertaking are likely to be of practical value. Linked with this we are anxious to co-operate with others having the same objectives. By forming our Sub-Committee within the BACS framework instead of a separate, solely library body, we are trying to take account of users' interests. We need to work closely with the Canadian High Commission, which we have asked to send a representative to our meetings, and I hope that as a result of this week's gatherings we shall keep in touch with interested bodies and individuals in Canada itself.

CANADIAN STUDIES RESOURCE COLLECTIONS IN THE UNITED STATES: AN INTRODUCTION TO THE MAJOR LIBRARIES*

RONALD D. TALLMAN
Director
Canadian Studies Center, University of Maine, Orono
President
Association for Canadian Studies in the United States

SCHOLARS OF Canadian Studies in the United States have been fortunate for years. For one thing, travelling to Canadian archives, repositories and libraries has been relatively quick and inexpensive. For another, the development of collections of Canadiana in the United States has been significant at some institutions for almost one hundred years. It has been only thirty years since a Canadian Royal Commission reported, "Good collections of Canadiana are rare in Canada. The three best collections in the world are now in the United States, in the Library of Congress, in the New York Public Library and in the Library of Harvard University."[1]

Conditions in Canada have changed dramatically since that time, both with the creation of the National Library of Canada and with the development of comprehensive collections of Canadiana at universities and provinial and national archives. The dramatic growth of interest in Canadian Studies stimulated by the Symons Commission has also been significant.

Research opportunities still exist in the United States for scholars interested in Canada. This overview is intended to guide the overseas Canadian Studies scholar to some of the most important collections in the United States. In most cases, we speak of collections of books and documents in this report, rather than of manuscript collections.

The Library of Congress in Washington remains one of the great research facilities in the world for Canadian Studies in all its ramifications. Its comprehensive collection development has led to significant holdings in fields from history to science to literature. Scholars interested in Canadian politics, diplomatic history and the history of Canadian-United States relations find the manuscript collections of the Library of Congress extremely valuable. The papers of American public servants held by the Library are an important source for the study of Canada itself.

---

* This is an extended version of a report on the status of Canadian Studies in American academic libraries given at the national conference of the Association for Canadian Studies, Halifax, June 1981, by University of Main librarians Evelyn Dearborn and Charlotte Huntley. The author also acknowledges the help of Dr. Alice R. Stewart, library consultant at the Canadian-American Center, University of Maine at Orono, and Dr. Norman London, academic relations officer at the Canadian Embassy, Washington.

Complementing these sources are those of the National Archives, also in Washington. The extensive collection of United States public records held at the Archives are invaluable to the diplomatic historian interested in the U.S. relationship with Canada or any other nation. Reports from American consulates in Canada, for example, provide students of Canadian history, politics, economics and society with significant information.

The New York Public Library has had a long-term commitment to Canadian Studies collection development. Its British North American collection is particularly useful for the study of Canadian history. The Boston Public Library has a modest manuscript collection of Canadian materials. A manuscript guide to Canadian materials is available.

Four state libraries have solid Canadiana collections, most focusing on history and state-Canada relations. They are in New York (Albany), Michigan (Lansing), Pennsylvania (Harrisburg), and Washington State (Olympia). The Washington State Library has a particularly strong collection of British Columbia materials.

Colonial historians will find material of value in other specialized libraries such as the Maine Historical Society (Portland), the Massachusetts Archives (Boston), and the American Antiquarian Society (Worcester, Mass.). Scholars interested in the colonial Northeast, including Quebec and the Maritime Provinces, may find valuable state volumes published by the Committee on New England Bibliography. Both the Wisconsin Historical Society (Madison) and the Minnesota Historical Society (St. Paul) have important Canadian material.

With the exception of the Library of Congress, however, most scholars will find American university libraries to be their principal sources of information about Canada in the United States. Three universities have been named National Resource Centers in Canadian Studies by the Division of International Education of the United States Department of Education. They are Duke University, the University of Vermont, and the University of Maine at Orono. Selection criteria included library quality as well as faculty and curriculum.

Vermont has built steadily since the establishment of its Canadian Studies Program in 1963. The Vermont collection is strong in most disciplines, with particular emphasis having been placed on history, geography and Quebec materials. Canadian history has been taught at Maine annually since 1925 but it was not until the establishment of a Center in the 1960's, coinciding with the development of a Canadian Studies graduate program, that the university became committed to a comprehensive Canadiana collection. The strength of the collection is in history, the Atlantic Provinces, and Canadian-American relations. The Maine collection is less strong in the social sciences. Vermont and Maine have both benefited from federal government library support, as well as aid from the Government of Canada.

The third National Resource Center is at Duke University, whose collection is the most comprehensive of the three. Duke's efforts were stimulated by the development of a Commonwealth Studies Program in the 1950's, and the development of the Lionel Stevenson collection of Canadian materials. Canadian Studies was established separately in the 1960's. Federal and provincial documents and a wide variety of Canadian newspapers on microfilm are an important part of the Duke resources in Canadian Studies.

An unpublished survey, based upon Library of Congress information, indicates that Duke has one of four largest collections of Canadiana in the United States. The others are Harvard University, the University of Texas at Austin and Northwestern University.

For nearly a century, Harvard has committed significant resources to its collection of Canadiana. The university stands alone among American academic libraries in the Canadian Studies area. The best guide to the collection is *Canadian History and Literature: Widener Shelflist #20* (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1968). The core of the Harvard collection was the donation of the Francis Parkman collection to the university in the late nineteenth century, and its subsequent endowment. The efforts of William Inglis Morse from 1943 bolstered the university's Canadiana collection, especially in the field of Canadian literature. Although the Harvard libraries are virtually unparalleled for the early period, the lack of faculty continuity has left holes in the modern period, particularly in serials. The development of the William Lyon Mackenzie King Chair in Canadian Studies at Harvard, in spite of its rotating appointment, may lead to a more comprehensive approach to recent Canadian Studies acquisitions.

Both Texas and Northwestern have devoted considerable time and substantial funds to Canadiana in the past thirty years. The two universities have the best collections beyond the east coast. Helping the development of the Northwestern collection was the establishment of a Canadian Studies Program in the 1970's. Texas suffers from the lack of a faculty commitment to teaching and research in the field.

Three other strong collections in New England are those at Dartmouth College, Yale University and Brown University. Dartmouth was recognized by the New England Library Association as a center of strength in Canadiana. The university has a large but somewhat uncoordinated collection. The efforts in the past of Mason Wade and former president John Sloan Dickey have helped build the Canadiana collection, but it has not been closely integrated with the college curriculum

In some respects, Yale University exceeds Harvard in Canadian Studies. Its modern holdings are comprehensive, some unique manuscript collections such as the Grenfell Papers can be found at Yale, and a Canadian Studies faculty led by Robin Winks has devoted much time and energy to collection development. Yale's Canadian federal and provincial government documents are impressive.

Brown University has committed resources to collection development in Canadian literature. A. Robert Rogers's 1971 survey, "Canadian Literature in American Libraries," indicated that Brown, Harvard and the Library of Congress had the three leading collections in the United States at that time.[2] The Canadian literature collection at Brown developed out of the Harris collection of American poetry and plays. Rogers reported that other important Canadian literature holdings ten years ago were to be found at the State University of New York at Buffalo, Duke, Texas, Yale, the University of Chicago, the University of Wisonsin, the State University of Iowa, Michigan State University, the University of Michigan, and Pennsylvania State University.

Significant Canadiana collections exist at several other United States universities. The University of Rochester, Columbia University and Michigan State University all have Canadian collection linked to Canadian Studies Programs. Other centers of collection excellence include the libraries at the University of Minnesota, the University of Washington, Stanford University, the University of California at Los Angeles and the University of California at Berkeley.

Most of the libraries discussed above have had a research focus. It would be appropriate as well to mention excellent undergraduate Canadian collections at three universities with major Canadian Studies programs: the State University of New York at Plattsburgh, St. Lawrence University, and Western Washington University.

Most United States universities with an interest in Canadian Studies have become selective depositories of Canadian government documents. The Canadian Embassy in Washington reports that the following university libraries in the United States have received depository status:

*Bridgewater State College
*Brigham Young University
University of California at Berkeley
University of California at Los Angeles
California State University, San Jose
University of Chicago
*Columbia University
Dartmouth College
*Duke University
University of Georgia
*Harvard University
University of Illinois
*Johns Hopkins University School of Advanced International Studies
University of Kentucky
*University of Maine, Orono
*University of Massachusetts, Amherst
University of Michigan
*Michigan State University
University of Minnesota
University of New Hampshire
*State University of New York at Buffalo
*State University of New York at Plattsburgh
*Northwestern University
Pennsylvania State University
University of Pittsburgh
*University of Rochester
*St. Lawrence University
*University of Vermont
University of Virginia
University of Washington
*Yale University

Three non-university libraries are also selective depositories for Canadian government documents: the Wisconsin Historical Society, the New York State Library, and the New York Public Library.

Excellent opportunities exist in the United States for research in the several fields of Canadian Studies. Reasons for library strength include the geographic affinity of the two nations, the large numbers of Canadian scholars who have taught at American institutions, the growing appreciation in the United States of the importance of Canada to this nation, and the development of Canadian Studies programs at many leading United States universities. Although Canada has become, as it should, the center for library and archival holdings in the field, important United States resource collections can be valuable to scholars of Canada around the world.

•Canadian Studies Program

REFERENCES

1 Canada, Royal Commission on National Development in the Arts, Letters and Sciences, *Report*. Ottawa: King's Printer, 1951; as cited in A. Robert Rogers, "Canadian Literature in American Libraries." *Library Quarterly* 43 (January 1978): 1.

2 Rogers, A. Robert. "Canadian Literature in American Libraries." *Library Quarterly* 43 (January 1978): 1-26.

VII

EPILOGUE: HOW TO COMPILE A BIBLIOGRAPHY

THE COMPILATION OF SYSTEMATIC BIBLIOGRAPHIES: A BACKGROUND PAPER

GLORIA M. STRATHERN
Associate Professor
Faculty of Library Science, University of Alberta
Edmonton, Alberta

THIS PAPER is concerned with the compilation of bibliographies produced as independent works. Before discussing principles of organization, a clarification of the word "bibliography" in this context is required. "The terminology of bibliography is complicated" notes L.M. Harrod,[1] who then proceeds to define the word in forty-eight lines, compared with his usual two to three line definitions. A useful working definition was provided by Verner Clapp:

> In its widest meaning, bibliography includes all studies relating to the physical and intellectual aspects of books to the extent that these studies contribute to an understanding of the history of books, of the status of individual works and of their relationship to other works.[2]

The compilation of bibliographies, then, concerns studies of the intellectual aspects of books or other forms of recorded information. This sub-field of bibliography has been termed variously systematic, enumerative, or reference bibliography. Such bibliographical works assemble information about materials that have some formal relationship to each other in a systematic order, according to some principle of organization such as: alphabetically by author, chronologically, by physical formats, or by subject arrangement.

A simplistic definition of such works is "a list of books" and the systematic bibliographer has been compared to Dr. Johnson's lexicographer, "a harmless drudge." The preparation of bibliographies is seldom regarded as a scholarly activity in its own right; instead, such bibliographies are seen as tools of scholarship, preliminary to more substantial work.

Because of this attitude, little attention has been paid to the principles of design and organization of such bibliographies. A.J. Colaianne observes:

> One of the reasons for the uneven quality of recent bibliographic work is that the principles of annotated bibliography have never been set down. This in turn comes from a notion that making an annotated bibliography is simple and straightforward: that it is based largely on common sense.[3]

Colaianne's observations about annotated bibliographies are applicable to all systematic bibliographies. It is not entirely true that principles have never been set down, but the literature is scanty and scattered.

A good systematic bibliography is the result of an extensive study of a body of literature. It provides a guide to that literature and should contribute to the knowledge of the subject. It should provide the user with an overview of the whole subject, while identifying individual items in isolation, and in relationship to each other.

In order to achieve this purpose, the bibliographer should consider the product of research as a permanent work of scholarship and tackle the undertaking with the necessary academic rigor and scholarly principles. This will affect such considerations as the choice of subject, scope, organization, and presentation of the finished work.

The following quotations summarize the nature of systematic bibliography and its place in scholarly work:

> Systematic bibliography represents bibliography for the most part as art rather than science. Its immediate aim is to identify and describe in a systematic arrangement the books that may be suitable for a particular purpose or that have other common characteristics. Its typical product is called similarly a bibliography. The essential criteria for a bibliography are that it identify the books that it lists with a certainty sufficient for its purpose; that it describe those books in accordance with generally accepted criteria; that the listing be systematized, even if merely through an alphabetical arrangement; that the books so listed possess certain common characteristics; and that the listings be addressed to some recognizable purpose.[4]

The compilation of such bibliographies is seldom "simple and straightforward . . . based largely on common sense."[5] Moreover,

> It must . . . be understood that bibliography is a scholarly activity and as such demands impartiality, accuracy and an adherence to the general requirements for necessary and sufficient data.[6]

GUIDELINES FOR THE COMPILATION OF BIBLIOGRAPHIES

Authority. The Competencies of the Compiler

A.J. Pollard considered:

> An ideal bibliography demands a perfect acquaintance (1) with the subject matter; (2) with all possible forms in which it may be arranged. It may conceivably be produced equally well by a bibliographer obtaining much advice from an expert as to the subject matter, and by an expert in the subject matter getting much advice from the bibliographer as to possibilities of arrangement. But inasmuch as the possibilities of arrangement are few and fairly simple, while the subject matter may be of any degree of complexity, knowledge of the subject matter must always carry the day.[7]

One may argue with Pollard as to whether methods of arrangement are necessarily simple. Also, he does not discuss here any knowledge of citation standards. What is of value is the recognition of both subject knowledge and bibliographical skills. Also, that expertise in both fields is not necessarily found in the same individual. It follows that the subject specialist should recognize the need to acquire bibliographical training, or that a team of two or more people may be needed to provide the necessary competencies.

Purpose

Before undertaking a bibliography, the validity of the enterprise must be established. The bibliographer will need to ensure that he is not duplicating an existing or ongoing work. Also, the relationship of the new undertaking to existing works should be determined. A consideration of the proposed work in the context of existing knowledge will raise questions of organization and purpose. Should the new work continue the methods of organization already established, or are there considerations which alter the case? For example, Bruce Peel's *Bibliography of the Prairie Provinces* is organized chronologically, which is appropriate for the period treated. More recent studies in the same area have been arranged by subject, since that method of organization is more appropriate for later works.

Preliminary Investigation

The original statement of purpose is a hypothesis that a field of knowledge needs a bibliography. The preliminary investigation of the literature will test that hypothesis. A search is required to identify the state-of-the-art. I think it essential to note this, since, in my experience, many scholars are not well informed about existing reference works, especially annual bibliographies, commercially produced indexes, and guides to major collections. Considerable time and thought should be devoted to the design of a search strategy to ensure that relevant publications are located. A reliance on private sources and informal networks for information is not sufficient. It is also necessary for the researcher to recognize that works in other disciplines may treat his topic in whole or in part. Also, he must take into account the differences in the terminology of various disciplines and schools of thought, as well as differences in terminology in other countries and languages.

Audience

The identification of the audience for whom the bibliography is intended will determine some criteria for the design of the work. Is it for the layman, the student, or the specialist? This will affect decisions on scope, arrangement, and the amount and level of information to be supplied. These decisions will be considered further in subsequent sections.

Domain

The sources from which items will be drawn must be determined. The user needs to know what libraries and other resources have been used. The identification of the sources will reveal the limitations of the study and the degree of comprehensiveness attempted. It should ensure that the bibliographer treats the subject thoroughly and consistently within the determined limits of the resources used.

Specifications of Scope

The period of coverage, that is the inclusive dates of publications listed, must be specified. Within this period, the determined degree of comprehensiveness or selectivity, of languages, countries of origin, and types and editions of materials must also be specified. The bibliographer will recognize that limitations in any of these areas will have a significant effect on the balance and focus of the work. To illustrate: the decision to exclude Japanese publications, where Japanese scholars are research leaders, would be a serious limitation; so would the exclusion of works from some English-speaking countries, where comprehensive coverage of English language works is claimed.

Careful thought must be given to the categories of material to be covered. Does comprehensive treatment require the inclusion of government and institutional publications, conference proceedings, periodical and newspaper articles, non-print materials, manuscripts, maps and illustrative items? If not, the categories chosen for coverage should be specified.

The specifications must also identify the treatment of editions, translations, reprints, and new editions of works first published before the period of coverage.

In addition, the levels of treatment to be included must also be specified: for example, juvenile, popular, technical or specialized scholarly works.

Preparation of Entries

It is common practice to use unit cards or paper slips to record entries. This is a convenient method for portability and it permits rearrangement of the items as the work progresses. However, the inexperienced bibliographer may be unprepared for the amount of editing and revision needed for variant forms of name, changing series and periodical titles, and other inconsistencies. He should be aware, also, of the need to standardize the order in which elements are recorded, punctuation, capitalization and abbreviations.

In addition to the information to be provided in the bibliography, the researcher will need to make working notes for his own benefit, such as dates on which revisions are made, or reasons for particular decisions. It is worth noting here that individual work sheets, with elements printed in standard arrangement, may be more convenient for complicated materials for which unit cards are too cramped.

Citation Elements

Standards for the citation of items in the bibliography will be discussed by Professor Williamson. Therefore, they are not treated here. However, it is relevant to discuss the optional elements: annotations, reviews, locations and references.

The bibliographer must decide the extent of information to be provided for individual items. The citation of an entry identifies the item, while additional information assists the user to evaluate and locate the item.

Annotations or abstracts enable the user to decide whether the particular item is relevant to his needs. Informative notes may be useful to clarify obscure titles, explain the reason for including a particular item, or give its history. The identification of major reviews, locations of copies, and standard reference sources may also be appropriate. In all cases additional information should be succinct, and the time and expense involved in providing such information be taken into account.

Verification

The bibliographer must ensure that citations are accurate and free from typographical errors. It is essential that titles be transcribed from the item itself to avoid perpetuating literary "ghosts" and erroneous information. In a recent exercise, I found a sample item cited in no less than eight ways in various library catalogues and published sources. An examination of the original item and a comparison of it with my eight citations were required to provide a correct bibliographical entry.

Arrangement

A tentative method of arrangement will be proposed at the start of the research. As the work progresses, the range and balance of the materials will emerge. It is assumed that the bibliographer is examining the evidence objectively and will seek to arrange the assembled documentation in a rational manner appropriate to the scope and purpose of the work.

The determination of the arrangement is critical to the usefulness of the final product. It is here, especially, that the art and scholarship of the bibliographer is demonstrated. The arrangement should be logical, simple, and easy to use. The most useful guide to bibliographical arrangement is still, in my opinion, A.W. Pollard's 1950 article.

Presentation

The presentation of the final text of the bibliography and the design of the completed work must be borne in mind during compilation. Since this paper is concerned with compilation rather than publication, they are not discussed. However, an excellent treatment of the title, preliminary matter, and makeup of the published text, and notes on the preparation of indexes, may be found in the manual prepared by McCrum and Jones for the Library of Congress.[8]

REFERENCES

1 Harrod, L.M. The Librarian's Glossary. 4th rev. ed. London: Deutsch, 1977, p. 107.
2 Clapp, V.W. "Bibliography," *Encyclopedia Americana* 3, p. 721
3 Colaianne, A.J. "The Aims and Methods of Annotated Bibliography." *Scholarly Publishing* 11 (1980): 32.
4 Clapp, V.W., p. 722.
5 Colainne, A.J., p. 32.
6 Kenny, J. *Preparing a Bibliography.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1976, p. 1.
7 Pollard, A.W. *The Arrangement of Bibliographies.* A.A.L. Reprints, no. 2. London: Association of Assistant Librarians, 1950, p. 1.
8 McCrum, Blanche P.; and Jones, Helen D. *Bibliographic Procedures and Style: A Manual for Bibliographers in the Library of Congress.* Washington: The Library, 1966, Appendixes D and E.

RECOMMENDED READINGS

American Library Association. Reference Services Division. Bibliography Committee. "Criteria for

Evaluating a Bibliography." *RQ* 11(1972): 359-60.

Intended for the evaluation of existing bibliographies, this checklist is equally valuable for the preliminary design of a bibliography.

Bates, Marcia J. "Rigorous Systematic Bibliography." *RQ* 16(1976): 7-26.

An excellent treatment of the subject, with considerable detail on selection principles.

Criteria for the Evaluation of Enumerative Bibliographies. Ottawa: Committee on Bibliographical Services for Canada, 1979. 8p.

A useful checklist based on the American Library Association item.

Kenny, Janice. *Preparing a Bibliography.* Canberra: National Library of Australia, 1976. 5p.

A useful brief description of the steps involved.

McCrum, Blanche P.; and Jones, Helen D. *Bibliographical Procedures & Style: A Manual for Bibliographers in the Library of Congress.* Washington: The Library, 1966. 133 p.

Part one provides basic instructions for planning a bibliography and compiling entries. Part two is a style manual. Includes useful appendices on the preparation of annotations and indexes.

Robinson, A.M. Lewin. *Systematic Bibliography: A Practical Guide to the Work of Compilation.* 4th ed. London:Clive Bingley, 1979. 135p.

A text-book for students and others, which includes a chapter by C. D. Batty on computer applications and a lengthy bibliography.

THE COMPILATION OF A BIBLIOGRAPHY: BIBLIOGRAPHIC REPRESENTATION AND ORGANIZATION

NANCY J WILLIAMSON
Associate Professor
Faculty of Library Science, University of Toronto
Toronto, Ontario M5S 1A1

INTRODUCTION

WHILE THE DECISION to compile a bibliography begins with an intellectual commitment to an identified information need and a defined area of coverage, it must be followed by a number of technical decisions necessary to ensure that the resulting list is useful, consistent, and meets acceptable bibliographic standards. Since, in many ways, bibliography can be considered an art rather than a science, it could be concluded that the bibliographers should be left to make such decisions within the context of their own experiences and within the confines of bibliography as they have come to understand it. Moreover, substantial support for this approach can be seen in limited research[1] which has demonstrated that bibliographers in a particular subject field are fairly cohesive in their approach to bibliographical technique. Nevertheless, it is important for a bibliographer to have a frame of reference within which to work – a plan which will ensure a reasonably systematic approach to the gathering and organization of bibliographic data. Such a systematic approach has become more essential as a result of recent developments in areas of publishing and information transfer. As we move toward the twenty-first century and the predicted "paperless information systems,"[2] there is evidence that bibliographical work will be increasingly controlled by computer technology, with emphasis being given to compatability of files for national and international exchange of data in machine readable form. Computerization of bibliographic data, already well established, is now being recognized by some bibliographers[3] as having certain advantages and important potential for the improvement of bibliographic practice. Whether a bibliography is computerized or prepared by more traditional methods, preliminary planning and organization of procedures to be used in preparing the data is equally important in both cases.

The purpose of this paper is to provide the theoretical background and procedural framework for the decision-making process involved in the more detailed tasks of the *selection* of *bibliographical elements* to be organized into *entries or records,* and the arrangement and *display* of those records in lists. The objectives of bibliography, and the principles and rules required to support and carry out those objectives are discussed, and the nature of the machine-readable record and its capabilities examined. While it has been assumed that bibliography pertinent to Canadian Studies will be primarily enumerative in nature, any, or all, of the objectives and principles which apply to such bibliography will also be pertinent to descriptive bibliography. The theoretical framework is relevant to both types, whereas major differences will be found in the practices used in the handling of individual descriptive elements. In particular, the level of detail in the recording of title page information, the extensiveness of collation information and the precision in the distinction of issues and editions are important features in the differentiation of the two types. Indeed, the enumerative bibliographer is in greater need of help than is the descriptive bibliographer. While descriptive bibliography is well served by the works of Bowers[4] and others, there are few very comprehensive guidelines to aid the literary and subject bibliographer. At one end of the spectrum there are excellent treatises on the principles and details of descriptive bibliography, while atthe other there are the manuals of the style for theses and essay writing which are directed primarily toward the correct presentation of bibliographic footnotes and references. Neither of these serves the enumerative bibliographer well. In practice, enumerative bibliographers must draw on experience gained in their own work and in observation of the work of others. Nor are the great library catalogues such as the *National Union Catalog* and the *General Catalogue of Printed Books* in the British Museum easy answers to bibliographic technique without some guidance and understanding. The principles and rules on which these tools have been based have varied with time over their long histories. As a result they are not only inconsistent with each other but also within themselves. Frequently, whatever conclusions and decisions are made, the bibliographer is left with some important questions unanswered. It is not so much a single set of all-purpose rules which the bibliographer needs, but rather an understanding of general principles from which specific rules can be developed for a particular bibliography.

OBJECTIVES AND FUNCTIONS OF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The enumeration of bibliographic items is the fundamental objective of all levels and kinds of bibliographic work. As such, it is the natural starting point in the planning of the technical details for the representation and organization of bibliographic items. *What* is enumerated and *how* it is enumerated often varies with the intentions of the bibliographer and the nature of the list. While some bibliographies are the by-products of scholarly work, others are instruments in the communication of knowledge, whereas still others may be intended as ends in themselves. However, frequently there is no precise dividing line separating the various types. Many lists will serve more than one purpose and there are several factors which provide a common denominator for most lists.

In specific terms, there are three basic functions which most bibliographies should be expected to perform for their potential users. They should:

1 *Describe* particular bibliographic items;

2 *Distinguish* various works and various representations of the same work,[5] and

3 *Relate* different representations of the same work, as well as representations of different works which have some feature in common with each other.

To accomplish these functions, bibliographic representation and organization must be such that it achieves three things:

1 Clear and unambiguous *identification* of a particular item or issue of that item;

2 *Differentiation* among items to the extent required by potential users for a *choice* among items; and

3 Arrangement and *organization* of records and provision for their retrieval in such a way as to make both individual items and groups of items readily accessible to users.

Clear and unambiguous identification assumes bibliographic entries which contain all the elements necessary to enable users to make positive identification of an item as being suitable for their purposes, and to permit them to acquire the item either through purchase, or through the use of a library catalogue, or some other information source. Similarly, the entries must contain sufficient bibliographic details to differentiate one item from another, for purposes of choosing among works on the same subject, among works by the same author, and among editions and issues of the same work. Finally, it should be possible to retrive from the list, either a particular item about which some information is known, or groups of items which have characteristics in common which make those groups of potential interest to the users. In terms of use, for most subject bibliographies, the grouping function is more important than the location of known items. Nevertheless, the selection and organization of the bibliographic elements in individual entries on a systematic basis will ultimately determine the logical grouping of items.

Unfortunately, easy fulfilment of these functions is hindered by the heterogeneous nature of both the users and information itself. Some users of bibliographies will be content to scan a list to increase and update their knowledge of a particular literary or subject field The basic requirement for these users will be an organization of entries which is appropriate to the literature of the particular field. Other users will be interested in selecting particular items from the list with the intention of locating those items for actual perusal. Whatever the purpose, it is essential to take into account the fact that different users will identify the same item in different ways, depending on their backgrounds and the initial source of information about an item. Moreover, traditionally, bibliographic items are viewed in a linear arrangement, while recorded information itself is multi-dimensional and various users will find different methods of organization of entries useful. The bibliographer must take responsibility for determining the method of organization and access most suited to the majority of users and for providing alternative ways of gaining access by others. This is no simple task. Material which is grouped according to one method of organization is scattered in terms of another.

PRINCIPLES OF BIBLIOGRAPHIC REPRESENTATION AND ORGANIZATION

Success in achieving the objectives is dependent upon the application of sound and consistent principles, which in turn can be used as the frame of reference for the application of rules. Insofar as can be determined,[6] no single bibliographer has set out a comprehensive and clearly defined list of the principles of enumerative bibliography, but a search of the literature indicates that bibliographers generally recognize and apply three important principles which are the foundations of their work.

These are:

1 The principle of selection;
2 The principles of description, including
  a identification;
  b sources of bibliographical elements;
  c inclusion of elements
3 The principles of arrangement, including
  a display of entries
  b organization of elements in entries;
  c style of entries.

Further investigation through actual examination of bibliographies indicates that practising bibliographers also apply the following:

4 The principle of authorship
5 The principle of uniform heading
6 The principle of inevitable association
7 The principle of multiple approach

The application of the principle of selection determines the kind of bibliography, its area of coverage, and the choice of items for inclusion and does much to influence the general characteristics and overall structure of a list. The intellectual content and the physical format of materials, as well as their literary form, have been found to be responsible for the variations in the bibliographic character of some lists. At least three criteria for selection have been identified – the bibliographical characteristics of items, their information content and the human interests of bibliographers and potential users. Thus the nature of the bibliography and its contents must be defined before the decisions on bibliographic details can be finalized.

PRINCIPLES OF DESCRIPTION

Description as the focal point of bibliographical work determines the details of the 'identification' of a particular representation of a work and its 'distinction' from other works and from other representations of the same work. In the application of the principles of description, uniformity, clarity, economy of presentation and accuracy are essential goals. In general they determine how an item is to be described and must be supported by rules which will answer such questions as: What are the bibliographic elements which may be used in describing a work? Which are essential? Which desirable? Which can be dispensed with? Fortunately, among bibliographers in the major disciplines, there is a remarkable agreement on the bibliographical elements which are required for an acceptable bibliographic entry.

Inherent in the principles of description is the concept of a 'minimum entry' required to adequately identify an item exactly. Also with respect to the inclusion of descriptive element, the literature indicates that bibliographers are in close agreement on 'standard' entries for various purposes. From bibliographic practice there has emerged a list of essential elements which are accepted as 'standard' for enumerative bibliographies and which all agree may be added to under special conditions. At least two respected bibliographers have set out guidelines for a 'model' entry. A.M. Lewin Robinson[7] in his *Systematic Bibliography* has identified four[8] categories of description which he has defined precisely. These are (1) the short title, which is equated with the entries in Pollard and Redgrave's *Short-Title Catalogue of English Books to 1640;* (2) the standard catalogue entry based on cataloguing rules, and typical of entries in *Canadiana*, the *National Union Catalog* and the *British National Bibliography;* (3) the standard bibliographic description designated for use for antiquarian and rare books, and for first editions, which is equated with the treatment of entries in Donald Gallup's *T.S. Eliot: A Bibliography;* and (4) full standard bibliographical description as exemplified in the British Museum's *Catalogue of Books Printed in the XVth Century.* In these four categorizations a precise standard is proposed which has many similarities to categories of description identified by A.W. Pollard.[9] As in the case of Robinson, Pollard designates two of his four categories for rare books and descriptive bibliography, while the two remaining types of entries could be considered appropriate for enumerative bibliography.

From this, and from the work of other bibliographers, it can be clearly understood that bibliographers recognize the existence of 'standards' for description. To the scholarly bibliographer, 'standard form' is synonymous with descriptive bibliography, but this having been established it is logical to assume that entries which are not 'standard descriptive entries' are standard entries for enumerative bibliography. Moreover, there is a definite pattern which links the bibliographer's description with the library cataloguer's description as exemplified in Charles Cutter's[10] short, medium and full entries, and can be readily equated with the current bibliographic standards set out in the three levels of description in the second edition of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules.*[11]

Of equal importance with the selection of elements for inclusion in the description is the source from whence those elements come. The bibliographer must be able to find satisfactory answers to such questions as "What is the most authoritative source for bibliographic data?" "If that source is lacking, or insufficient for adequate description, what alternative source should be used?" "Is there an order of preference in the use of these other sources?"

Traditionally, the primary source for bibliographic data representing printed materials has been the item itself - the title page and other appropriate parts of the item - and certainly there is no substitute which is equal to this. While there may be good and sufficient reason for including some entries in a bibliography for which circumstances make it impossible for the bibliographer to actually see an item, this fact should be acknowledged by the compiler. Moreover, entries from other bibliographies and library catalogues should be used with caution. Some major bibliographers may be relied upon because of their well established reputation. For example, national bibliographers will often serve to supplement and expand on the bibliographical history of an item if the information is properly verified, but information external to the item should not be accepted without question.

An additional problem is the ambiguity which frequently surrounds the chief source of information. Such problems arise when printed materials have more than one title page, perhaps, in different languages, or where there are several sources of information which might be regarded as a chief source. Such problems are even more acute with non-print media. For bibliographers this problem will intensify with the increased use of such materials for informational purposes. Those who include non-print media in their lists will very quickly discover that there is nothing so standard as a title page, and that materials such as microforms, videotapes and sound recordings make the question "What is the primary source of bibliographic data?" crucial.

PRINCIPLES OF ARRANGEMENT

Second in importance only to the content of bibliographic entries is their arrangement and organization in relation to each other. The application of the principle of arrangement in bibliography requires the decisions at two levels of description – at the general level in the sequencing of entries and at the specific level of ordering elements within the individual entries. Moreover, consistency of application is important

In practice, the individual entries are obviously constructed first and then sequenced. However, if the entries are to be suitably structured, it is essential that there be an overall plan for arrangement first. For good reasons, all bibliographers do not arrange entries according to the same criteria. Numerous methods of organization are prescribed in the literature and can be observed in practice. Arrangements vary from very simple sequencing by the first words of titles, to highly structured arrangements which employ very complex hierarchical displays. Although no single 'standard' method emerges, in a theoretical discussion of order in bibliographies, A.W. Pollard[12] saw the arrangement of bibliographies as being used on three fundamental principles – intelligibility of users, visibility and the permanent value of the method. Intelligibility, inherent order, timeliness, and universality are the criteria for arrangement set out by Pollard, who further recommends three principal methods of arrangement – alphabetical sequencing by author, chronological order by date of publication, and logical or systematic arrangement by the natural categories of the subject. In the field of literature, the use of alphabetical arrangement surpasses, by far, all other methods of sequencing of entries. Given the nature of the material, this is not surprising. However, it might be expected that in other subject fields where the subject matter is less author oriented, alphabetical sequencing by author could more usefully be subsumed under broad categories of the subject as determined by its nature and structure. One can also conceive of situations in which a chronological subarrangement undre broad subject categories might be appropriate. Ultimately, the method of arrangement is that of the individual bibliographer who must decide on the basis of the kind of the bibliography and its intended use. That decision will determine the type of bibliographical element which will be the preferred initial element in the entries in a particular list.

PRINCIPLES OF AUTHORSHIP AND INEVITABLE ASSOCIATION

The principles of authorship and inevitable association generally control the choice of the initial elements in bibliographic entries. Moreover, their consistent application should both enhance the quality of the entries and provide for a logical organization or framework within which individual entries can be placed.

As suggested earlier in this paper, such elements as titles and dates of publication or issue may be selected as the primary elements in entries where deemed appropriate to the bibliography. However, for several reasons, these elements are likely to be used less frequently than authors for this purpose. First of all, although the title will undoubtedly be the filing element where a work has no known author, overall organization of entries by unique title does not often provide for useful grouping of entries in the same way in which names of authors do. Secondly, with respect to date of publication, even in a small bibliography, there will usually be a number of items with the same date, so that further subarrangement by some additional element is needed. In such a case, dates may be more usefully employed as section headings than as an integral part of particular entries. Finally, western civilization is conditioned to the 'author entry' by its predominant use in both bibliographies and library catalogues.

While the use of authors as the primary elements of 'headings' for particular entries is logical, the principle of authorship is not necessarily easy to apply. Over the years, it has been demonstrated that the question "Who is an author?" is not always easily and quickly answered. Some works have one author, others have several, while still others have no visible author at all. Various editions and issues of the same work may be associated with different authors, whereas in some cases the persons or corporate bodies associated with a work may not be 'authors' in the sense of some definitions of authorship.

Bibliographers and librarians differ somewhat in their definitions of authorship. The literature of bibliography does not define 'authorship' precisely, although bibliographic style manuals, such as Kate Turabian's *A Manual for Writers of Term Papers, Theses, and Dissertations,*[13] as well as the published bibliographies themselves, suggest that the bibliographer's definition broadly describes the person or corporate body which is 'represented' as author and is therefore closely and inevitably associated with the work. However, the bibliographer is left to define 'association.' "Does 'association' imply location of the name on the title page?" "On some other formal source?" "When an author is known but not named, is the person or body still considered to be 'associated' with the work?" "Can a corporate body be an author in the same sense as a person?" "When does a publisher become an author?" "What is the status of editors and compilers?" These are some of the problems which must be solved.

In contrast, current cataloguing codes and standards define 'authorship' somewhat more narrowly as "the person chiefly responsible for the creation of the intellectual or artistic content of a work."[14] Such a definition encompass persons with a wide variety of creative responsibilities including the work of writers, composers, cartographers, artists and photographers, as well as compilers of bibliographies. On the other hand, compilers of anthologies and editors of multi-authored works are not accorded the status of 'authors' on the grounds that their association with the work is more technical than creative. With respect to corporate bodies, current cataloguing standards at both the international and national levels, describe them as 'bodies' (not authors) suitable as entries for works which 'emanate'[15] (or issue) from them. In some cases, 'emanation' is also precisely described as being limited to particular types of publications such as laws, administrative policies of bodies, and proceedings of named conferences where the content of the work can be categorized as the "collective thought" or activity of the body. As a result of these recent interpretations of authorship, library catalogues will henceforth contain many more principal entries under titles than they have in the past. Specifically, works prepared under the direction of editors or compilers, exclusive of bibliographies, will have their principal entries under their titles, as will many works issued by corporate bodies with no designated personal author.

While the variations in the definition of authorship may be considered somewhat academic, preference for one approach or the other may depend on other circumstances surrounding the compilation of the particular bibliography. It is the prerogative of the bibliographer to follow the traditional bibliographic approach to the problem, but it is important that it be done with a full understanding of all the factors involved, and with the recognition that some of those factors are in conflict. Fundamental to any decision on the definition of authorship is recognition of the fact that most library catalogues are multiple entry catalogues and will usually supplement a title entry with additional entries under the editor, compiler or an appropriate corporate body, whereas many bibliographies are single entry lists and may not provide for this secondary approach. In the latter case, the inclusion of a good index to give multiple approach to entries will do much to solve this problem. A second factor is the users, particularly users of subject bibliographies, who may ultimately actually wish to locate some of the items from a bibliography in a library. In this case, it must be possible to recognize the item listed in the bibliography as being the same item located in a library catalogue. Finally, with the increased use of computers and the development of bibliographic networks, bibliographic standards have a growing importance in the storage and retrieval of bibliographic items. Thus it is essential to recognize that the generally accepted bibliographic standard is the one exemplified in national bibliographies such as *Canadiana* and *British National Bibliography,* both of which are prepared according to cataloguing standards. The nature of a particular bibliography, the methods by which the entries are prepared and made available and the place of that bibliography among other bibliographies of a particular discipline are some of the factors which will influence the bibliographer's decision on how closely such standards should be followed. Whichever approach to authorship is used, the consistent application of the principle should aid inthe structuring of a list through the grouping of items which have some characteristic in common. The application of the authorship principle will determine the *choice* of the first or initial element in each entry to be included in the list.

PRINCIPLE OF UNIFORM HEADING

Equally important is the *form* in which the first element of each entry is recorded. It is generally assumed by both bibliographers and cataloguers that the names of persons and bodies used as entry elements should be uniformly recorded wherever they appear in a particular list. Similarly, variant titles of the same work should be listed or identified with one title which serves as the gathering device for all editions and issues of a particular work. Consistency in recording names and titles presents few problems as long as authors write under one name and under one form of name, and as long as works are published under only one title. Frequently, such is not the case, and rules are required to establish the criteria for uniformly selecting the best name or title, or for the establishment of the relationships among variant names or titles.

While it is desirable to be consistent in the recording of authors' names and titles of works throughout a particular bibliography, the magnitude of the problem will be relative to the potential size of the bibliography and the depth of coverage given to works of a single author and the editions of a single work. In many bibliographies, particularly subject bibliographies, there may not be a definitive list of one author's works and variant titles may occur very infrequently or not at all. Bibliographers are less likely to find the problem as serious as it can become in a large library catalogue and the rationalization of all possible variations often requires extensive and time consuming bibliographic searching in order to establish the form of the name to be used. How thorough and extensive the searching should be will depend on the bibliography being compiled, the nature of its content, and its relationship to other bibliographical works. Moreover, caution must be exerted since many of the sources which the bibliographer will use in the search, while consistent to a point, have at various periods in their history been subjected to different rules and standards and therefore vary within themselves. In the final analysis, the problems must be recognized and principle balanced against practicality.

PRINCIPLE OF MULTIPLE APPROACH

Short bibliographies can be scanned easily and quickly in their entirety. However, single entry bibliographies of substantial length, multi-volume sets, and those which are scheduled to be updated annually, or through frequent supplements of one kind or another, almost certainly require some means of access in addition to the basic arrangement of entries. It will be important for three reasons – varied needs ofusers, the multi-dimensionality of information and convenience of using multi-volume sets and supplements. For example, for some users access through titles may be important, or it may be useful to be able to locate the works of particular publishers, specific illustrators or the contributions of authors whose names have not been used as the filing word. Similarly, in subject bibliographies, when the basic arrangement is by broad subject category, there may be need for direct author access as well.

In brief, bibliographies of any size will be more convenient and more useful to a greater number of people if some kind of multiple approach is provided to individual records. The essential questions for the bibliographer to pose are "What kinds of additional access are required?" and 'How should they be provided?" Basically, there are three ways of providing multiple approach to bibliographic entries – by the duplication of entries in two or more places in a list, by providing cross references, often through the use of serial numbers which refer to numbered entries, and through the preparation of indexes. Some of these methods are more desirable than others, for various reasons. Duplicate entries to cover overlapping subject areas is wasteful of space is required on a large scale, but has the advantage of supplying the user with full bibliographic information wherever it is appropriate. On the other hand, the use of serial numbers to indicate entries fully enumerated elsewhere in a list is space saving, but it forces the user to move back and forth through the bibliography to avoid missing vital entries, in a manner which is not conducive to the efficient scanning of entries. The index approach is compact and efficient for updating and for multi-volume sets, and the most efficient method for some kinds of access such as full access to authors or titles. For printed bibliographies, there is no perfect system. The bibliographer must ensure a basic arrangement of entries which is most appropriate for the situation and provide additional access points accordingly.

RULES AND STANDARDS

The culmination of the plans or compilation of a bibliography should be a set of rules or guidelines which can be followed as the work proceeds. Whether these are published standards or codes, or the bibliographer's own rules, will be relative to the situation in which the bibliography is being compiled. Such questions as – 'Is the bibliography a one-time publication?'' ''Is it related to some other publication either published previously or intended to be published in the future?'' ''Is it to be continuously updated?'' and if it is related to another work, ''What rules are being used for that work?'' are some of the problems which should be addressed.

Whatever the decision, the bibliographer should be aware of the support which can be found for the development of rules in the various style manuals and such standard bibliographic and cataloguing tools as the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, Second Edition, and the *International Standard Bibliographic Description*[16] as well as the various formats for machine readable cataloguing (MARC).[17] While some of these tools are complicated in themselves, discussions with experts who understand them may help the bibliographer to solve some of his problems. Ultimately, the bibliographer should have at his fingertips, a set of rules which will aid him in answering four very practical questions:

1 How should the item be *described*?
2 What bibliographical elements should be *chosen* as the initial elements in entries?
3 In what *form* should the first element of a particular entry appear?
4 How should the entries be *displayed*?

When developing rules which will aid the bibliographer in solving these problems, the more detailed aspects of each of these questions should be addressed.

HOW SHOULD THE BIBLIOGRAPHIC ITEM BE DESCRIBED?

With respect to *bibliographic description* the compiler must have answers to the following questions:

1 What *level* of bibliographical description is required to serve the purposes of the bibliography? Is it the level of the 'work' or literary unit, the level of the 'edition' or bibliographic unit, or the particular 'issue' which is important to the content and intended use of the bibliography?

2 What bibliographic *elements* are required to provide for the level of description required?

3 What *order* of elements should be used in the entries?

In general, bibliographical description at the level of the work is only suitable for the briefest of lists. Typical of such lists would be the ephemeral book list, and even there this level is probably too brief for serious informational purposes. Most subject bibliographers should probably aim for the level of editions, whereas bibliographies which contain materials which are of value for their bibliographical excellence or rarity will usually require a level of description which would describe the issue of a work.

The level of description chosen will determine the elements contained. For purposes of subject bibliography, researchers in a particular subject field will have opinions on the kind of bibliographic data which facilitates their work. For some users, it is very important not only to have the author, title, edition, publisher and date of publication of the item, but also to be able to see the subtitle, the series and the number of pages. Not only does such information provide for more precise identification of the bibliographic unit, but it makes available to the user additional information about the content from the subtitle, some knowledge of the quality of the work from the series, and the extent of the content from the paging. Such information becomes increasingly important to the researcher if the particular item is not physically readily available to him. In such a situation, he must have enough information available to decide whether the item is sufficiently important to his work, either to travel a distance to see it or to request it through the interlibrary loan services of a library.

The most practical approach for the bibliographer is to locate a 'standard form' such as one of the forms described by Pollard and Robinson, or those described in the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*[18] and to consider it in the light of the proposed bibliography. For many lists the 'standard form' may be sufficient. Inevitably, some subjects will require additions to a standard form because of peculiarities of the subject. A simple example of this might be a list of plays, where it would be desirable to include bibliographical notes related to the first performance of the play. Another aspect of the problem for the bibliographer will be the variety of physical formats of the materials which are to be included. Most subject bibliographies will contain one or more of three types of bibliographic items – books and pamphets, journal citations and serial publications. Moreover, in the future, there may be more reason to include microforms, motion pictures, filmstrips, videotapes and other kinds of audio-visual media. A 'model' entry will be required for each of the physical formats to be included, and it will be important to identify non-print formats in such a way that the user knows that the item is not printed material. For example Ph.D. dissertations may be available in hard copy in the institution which has granted the degree, but elsewhere they are frequently only available in microform. Many researchers want to know what the format of the item is before they go in search of it.

WHAT SHOULD BE CHOSEN AS ENTRY ELEMENT?

With respect to choice of entry element, the bibliographer will be required to make a decision as to the entry element preferred for all entries wherever possible. For bibliographical elements such as title or date, the choice should be relatively stable. However, the nature of publication and the nature of authorship will result in a variety of problems when the preferred element is to be author. Consistent and judicious decisions on the choice of initial element require rules which enable a bibliographer to answer such fundamental questions as "*Who* is an author?" and "What is an appropriate substitute for an author, when one is not present?" Both question arise from a variety of bibliographic conditions which themselves pose problems which must be solved. The bibliographer must include in his rules criteria for making a choice of entry element when:

1 The *responsibility* for the content of a work is *shared* by two or more persons or bodies;

2 There is *no visible author* on the item and none can be located; or there is no visible author but one can be found in other reliable sources;

3 One or more *corporate* bodies appear to have some *responsibility* for the content of a work, either on their own or in conjunction with one or more personal authors;

4 There is *mixed responsibility* for the content, with two or more persons or bodies assuming different kinds of responsibilities for the same publication, as for example when a work is the result of the collaborative effort of a writer and an artist, or of an original author and a reviser.

When the answer to the question "Who is the author?" is obscured in some way, rules are required to ensure consistent selection of an alternative initial element for a particular entry.

IN WHAT FORM SHOULD AN ENTRY ELEMENT BE RECORDED?

Turning to the form of entry elements used in entries, consistency in the recording of the same bibliographic element wherever it appears as entry element is important. Once again, the bibliographer needs rules to solve a number of problems.

When personal names are used as entry elements, the bibliographer may be forced with making a decision on:

1 *Which name* is to be used when:

  a A person uses and is known by *different forms of the same name*, in the same or different languages; or

  b When a person has used *different names*, either simultaneously or successively because of a legal change of name, or through the use of one or more pseudonyms;

2 What to use as the filing element in entering *multi-part names* such as compound or prefixed surnames; and

3 The method to be used to *differentiate* and *distinguish* different persons with identical names.

Corporate names present all of these same problems. They may have more than one name, the names may have multiple parts, and there may be two or more distinct and unique organizations with the same name. However, the problem is often compounded by the fact that corporate organizations are frequently very complex in their administrative structure, with some bodies having hierarchies of departments, bureaus, sections and committees which may be authors in their own right but which in name are dependent on the parent organization. Government bodies are typical of this problem. Moreover, some bodies go through frequent reorganization resulting not only in new names, but in the birth of a completely new organizations in most of their aspects.

Titles too present problems of identification and differentiation, which in certain circumstances may require the bibliographer to establish rules. This will be particularly important in a list which contains works which have an extensive bibliographical history in which some of the items have been published in various editions and issues under various titles in the same and different languages. In such cases it will be necessary to determine how a particular item should be *identified* and how it should be *related* to other issues and editions of it. In some cases, also it may be necessary to *differentiate* among different works with identical titles.

Whether the problems relate to the form of personal or corporate name, or to titles of variant editions, more often than not, evidence of the existence of the problem may not be present on the item in hand. Thus the bibliographer must know the item he is listing and have some knowledge of its bibliographic history. Hence the development and application of rules will often need to be supplemented by bibliographical searching in reliable tools and actual examination of variant representations of a particular bibliographic item.

HOW SHOULD THE ENTRIES BE DISPLAYED?

Supplementary to rules which determine choice and form of entry element and which provide for the overall organization and arrangement of a particular list, there are additional details which pertain to the display of entries which must be addressed, including:

1 The overall format of individual entries;
2 The abbreviations which are to be used in entries; and
3 Rules for punctuation and capitalization of various parts of entries.

In general, the number and kinds of rules required will depend on the size and complexity of the bibliography proposed. However, the ultimate goal should be the consistent and organized presentation of the bibliographic data which has been gathered. The rules used should be adequate to solve whatever bibliographic problems arise from that data based on the questions which have been raised here. While such rules should not be so rigid as to provide an unworkable straitjacket, they should set a norm into which the majority of entries will fall. Exceptions should be kept to the minimum and reserved for the unusual.

COMPUTERIZATION OF BIBLIOGRAPHIES

While there is no reason to believe that every bibliography should be computerized, bibliographers should be aware of the potential advantages and inherent problems in the storage and retrieval of bibliographic data in the computerized environment. To this end, it is important to understand the circumstances in which decisions to computerize bibliographic data should be seriously considered and to have a basic knowledge of the characteristics of machine-readable records and the problems of storing, manipulating and retrieving them.

The strongest arguments for producing bibliographies from machine-readable records are the infinite possibilities for efficiency and economy of effort in the manipulation of the data. At the point at which entries are created, a single master record can be prepared for each bibliographic item, which can then be manipulated to produce multiple records for a variety of purposes. Different kinds of lists can be prepared in which the entries may vary in content and format depending on the purpose of the lists. Multiple access to individual items can be accommodated through the production of lists with multiple entries for each item, or data may be extracted from the records for the production of indexes. In all of this, many of the routine and repetitive tasks of compilation may be accomplished more quickly and accurately than is possible by manual methods. Procedures for verification of data can be built into the routines of the operation, so that errors may be corrected with ease. Moreover, it is possible to update files and to prepare cumulations of lists by merging new and existing records and deleting from files those records which have been superseded or have become obsolete. In short, it is possible to remove much of the drugery from bibliographical work, under suitable conditions.

For purposes of retrieval of information, bibliographers have at least three alternatives from which to choose when selecting the physical format for a bibliography produced from machine-readable data – the traditional printed list, computer-output-microform (COM), and the on-line bibliographic database. While as yet print is still the most popular physical format for bibliographies intended to be produced only once, or updated only at very infrequent intervals, COM and on-line products are widely used for bibliographic services where there is a policy of continuous revision and updating on regular bases. This trend can be expected to increase rather than decrease in future. Many vitally important services, such as MEDLARS,[19] could not be provided with anything like the speed and efficiency for which they are noted, without the use of computerized data. Indeed some major tools such as the *Social Sciences Citation Index* probably would not even exist without the capability for machine manipulation of citations, whereas KWIC (Key-Word-In-Context)[20] indexes have made possible cheap and relatively efficient access to current literature in a host of specialized information fields. It is also important to note that some of the major bibliographies are prepared in more than one physical format, with all products being generated from the same set of machine-readable records. For example, *Social Sciences Citation Index* is available in print and on-line, whereas national bibliographies, such as *Canadiana* and the *National Union Catalog* are available to subscribers in printed, machine-readable and microform products. The versatility of the machine-readable record is a major advantage.

A decision to computerize should take into consideration the size of the bibliography to be produced, the extent and complexity of the indexes required and the policy for updating. Of course, proper computer facilities must be readily accessible and it is absolutely essential that experts in *both* computer programming and bibliographic work be involved. Costs must be carefully assessed and trade-offs among time, effort and efficiency calculated. Decisions should not be taken lightly and the bibliographer must be prepared for some degree of frustration, and perhaps delay, before the final product emerges. An essential key to success is knowledgeable and intelligent discussion between the bibliographer and computer experts on the requirements which the bibliography is intended to fulfill.

THE MACHINE-READABLE RECORD ITS CHARACTERISTICS

The techniques used in the computerization of bibliographic records are now well advanced with respect to procedures and formats. A variety of kinds of records are possible, ranging all the way from simple KWIC (Keyword-In-Context) indexes to the relatively complex MARC (Machine-Readable-Cataloguing) records used in library catalogues and national bibliographies. As with manually produced bibliographies, the choice of format to be used will depend upon such factors as costs, expertise, the purpose of the bibliography and its intended use. Moreover, the bibliographic content of entries may be the same whichever method of production is used. However, machine-readable bibliographic records have some characteristics which make them significantly different from printed records, and which affect the way in which they are handled. Specifically:

1 Some information which is implicit in printed records may need to be made explicit in machine-readable records;

2 Computers cannot differentiate among diferent kinds of bibliographic data without assistance;

3 Some kinds of bibliographic data vary greatly from record to record, whereas computers are basically designed to handle data which require the same space in every record in a file.

As a result, not only must any data to be retrieved be present, but if these data are to act as a key to retrieval, they must be precisely identified and specified for purposes of machine manipulation.

This need for 'identification' and 'specification' of data for computer manipulation has led to a process of categorization of bibliographic data according to the kind of data they are and the precise positioning of that data in the bibliographic record. This trend toward categorization has already been incorporated into such bibliographic standards as the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) and into the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. It is an approach to the recording of bibliographic data which is almost certain to be reflected more widely in bibliographic work of the future, and is in some ways a contradiction of the flexibility in bibliographic description which has been traditional to scholarly bibliographical work.

One method of data identification and recognition is that used in the KWIC index, which in its simplest form is a manipulation of cited titles to produce an elementary subject index. Here, the process of identifying index terms is accomplished by providing a 'stop list' of words *not* to be used as index terms. In the automated process, the stop list is matched against the cited titles; the computer rejects these stop words as index terms and in doing so, 'selects' the remaining terms as filing words to be used in formatting the titles in the printed index.

Where, as in a MARC record, the data to be manipulated are more complex, and include not only titles, but also authors, publishers, series statements and other bibliographical elements, the process of identification and specification also becomes more complex. At the present time, the computer can be assisted in the identification of specific data in four ways:

1 By positioning specific kinds of data in 'fixed' positions which remain constant for all records in a particular file;
2 By coding or tagging the data, to enable the computer to associate a specific kind of data with a particular code;
3 By building clues to the identification of specific kinds of data into the computer program;
4 By using combinations of the first three methods.

Since computers are designed to handle data which can be identified by their position in a record, the provision of a 'fixed field' for each kind of data to be included is an attractive solution. However, it is not always appropriate to bibliographic data. While such elements as the date of publication may, with some exceptions, contain the same number of characters, authors' names and titles of works will vary greatly in length from one record to another. In such instances, it will usually be more efficient and economical of storage space to allow the fields of data to 'vary' in length with the information, rather than to estimate the maximum length requirements for all records, fix the location of the data and discover that most records only partly fill the space allowed, while some are truncated for lack of it. When using 'variable length fields' for bibliographic data, the data are usually 'tagged' or coded so that they can be located by the computer regardless of their position in the record. As the capabilities of computers have advanced and the abilities of programmers have become more sophisticated, ways have been found of using simple methods of coding and building the requirements for data recognition into computer programs.

Any one of these methods may be used on its own, or where appropriate, may be combined with another. For example, MARC records combine fixed and variable fields. The method selected will depend on the data, the programming advice available, and the kind of bibliography. There is always an advantage in simplification, by reason of the fact that there will be fewer things which can go wrong. Also, in a bibliographic project which will require future supplements and updating of files, there may be some advantage in terms of both labour and costs of building as much as possible into the program rather than having to use complicated coding in every record.

It should be kept in mind that the MARC record format, first developed by the Library of Congress in the United States, is the accepted national and international standard for machine-readable bibliograpic and cataloguing data produced by the world's most eminent national bibliographic agencies, including the National Library of Canada. While the format is 'standard' some flexibility has been built into the format to permit the development of national formats which accommodate particular national needs. For example, certain aspects of Canadian MARC formats (CAN/MARC) provide for Canada's bilingual requirements. While the various national formats are not directly convertible one to another, they can be manipulated and translated into a common format under the umbrella of an international format which is called UNIMARC. Nevertheless, it should be emphasized that the MARC record is only one example of a machine-readable record format, which can accommodate the traditional content of a bibliographic entry. Depending on the size of the bibliography anticipated and the number of access points required as well as the expertise available, simpler formats can be created for individual projects. Some of these, such as that used in the KWIC type of index, are cheap, fast and simple, but the product is not elegant and not intended for permanent use. Other projects, of which *Canadian Selection*[21] is one example, testify to the fact that with some ingenuity, an efficient and aesthetically pleasing product can be achieved.

CONCLUSION

In the forgoing discussion of the problems of compiling a bibliography, no attempt has been made to prescribe a precise set of rules. Rather, the goal has been to establish a framework within which a bibliographer might devise a plan and a set of rules appropriate for his own work. Such rules should be developed within the context of objectives and principles acceptable to bibliographers in general, and suitable for the individual project in particular. Problems must be identified at the outset, tentative solutions addressed and final decisions made on the course to follow. Standards are important and so also is flexibility, but it must be flexibility with a full understanding of its implications.

REFERENCES

1 Williamson, Nancy Joyce. "Cataloguing and Bibliography: A Comparative Study of Their Interrelationships as Seen Through Their Principles and Practices." (Ph.D. dissertation, Case Western Reserve University, School of Library Science, 1977).
2 Lancaster, Wilfrid F. *Toward Paperless Information Systems*. New York, N.Y.: Academic Press, 1978.
3 Robinson, A.M. Lewin. *Systematic Bibliography: A Practical Guide to the Work of Compilation*. 4th ed. rev. London: Clive Bingley, 1979, pp. 83-101.
4 Bowers, Fredson. *Principles of Bibliographic Description*. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press, 1949.
5 In this paper, the term 'item' has been used to describe the bibliographic unit or particular representation of a work. The term 'work' refers to the literary unit, or, collectively, to all the editions and issues of a particular publication.
6 Williamson, Nancy Joyce. "Methodology in Bibliography." In The Bibliographical Society of Canada. *Colloquim III/IIIe Colloque*, pp. 28-32. Toronto: Bibliographical Society of Canada, 1979.
7 Robinson, A.M. Lewin. *Systematic Bibliography: A Practical Guide to the Work of Compilation*. 3d rev. ed. London: Clive Bingley, 1966, pp. 21-24.

8 Robinson's *Systematic Bibliography*, 4th ed. (pp. 22-25) actually describes five categories, the four described here and ISBD (International Standard Bibliographic Description). However, since the publication of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, 2nd ed., (AACR2), rules for description in cataloguing and ISBD have become synonymous. Thus, the four categories reflect the actual situation. While AACR2 was published first, Robinson's text for his fourth edition must have been prepared before AACR2 appeared.

9 Pollard, Alfred W. "The Objects and Methods of Bibliographic Collations and Descriptions." *The Library*, New series, 8 (April 1970): 216-217.

10 Cutter, Charles A. *Rules for a Dictionary Catalog*. 4th ed. Washington, D.C.: Gov't Print. Off., 1904, p.11.

11 American Library Association et al. *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. 2nd ed. Chicago: American Library Association, 1978, p.15.

12 Pollard, Alfred W. "The Arrangement of Bibliographies," *The Library*, 2nd series, 10 (1909): 169-187.

13 Turabian, Kate L. *A Manual for Writers of Term Papers, Theses and Dissertations*. 4th ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, c1973.

14 American Library Association et al. *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. 2nd ed., p.284.

15 Ibid., p.285.

16 International Federation of Library Associations. *ISBD(M): International Standard Bibliographic Description for Monographic Publications*. 1st standard ed. London: IFLA Committee on Cataloguing, 1974. (also ISBD standards for other physical formats).

17 Avram, Henriette D. *MARC: Its History and Implications*. Washington, D.C.: Library of Congress, 1975.

18 American Library Association et al. *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. 2nd ed., p.15.

19 United States. National Library of Medicine. *The MEDLARS Story of the National Library of Medicine*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, 1963.

20 Fischer, Marguerite. "The KWIC Index Concept." *American Documentation* 17 (April 1966): 57-70.

21 Jarvi, Edith T.; McLean, Isabel K.; and MacKenzie, Catherine. *Canadian Selection: Books and Periodicals for Libraries*. Toronto: Published by the University of Toronto Press for the Centre for Research in Librarianship, Faculty of Library Science, University of Toronto, 1978.

RECOMMENDATIONS APPROVED BY THE CONFERENCE

THIS CONFERENCE recognizes that, in spite of general activity in the 1970s to create finding aids for archival holdings and guides to contents of particular collections, there is an increasing need to add greatly to the quantity and quality of such aids and guides in order to improve the accessibility of collections to researchers and the service archival staff can supply. The Conference therefore recommends to funding bodies that programmes of support be developed and maintained to assist the creation of aids and guides as important research tools.

Sent to: SSHRCC
Minister responsible for the Public Archives
(Minister of Communications/Secretary of State)
cc: Dr. W.I. Smith, Dominion Archivist

THIS CONFERENCE recognizes the grave situation faced by Canadian research libraries because of the physical deterioration of their collections through the effect of acid upon paper. It recommends to the Minister of Communications that the National Preservation Program endorsed by the National Library Advisory Board in 1979 be considered an urgent matter for review and implementation as rapidly as possible.

Sent to: Minister reponsible for the National Library
(Minister of Communications/Secretary of State)
cc. Dr. Guy Sylvestre, National Librarian

THIS CONFERENCE congratulates the National Library of Canada on the initiation of publication of the long-awaited retrospective bibliography: *Canadiana 1867-1900: Monographs*. The Conference wishes to stress the importance of proceeding with further parts of this retrospective bibliography to include imprints before 1867 and up to 1950 and materials other than monographs, and recommends to the Minister of Communications that adequate funds be provided to the Retrospective National Bibliography Division of the National Library to bring about the speedy completion of the full project.

Sent to: Minister responsible for the National Library
(Minister of Communications/Secretary of State)
cc: Dr. Guy Sylvestre, National Librarian

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that the Multiculturalism Directorate of the Department of the Secretary of State undertake the translation of bibliographies of Canadian interest written in a language other than one of the two official languages.

Sent to: Secretary of State

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that the National Library of Canada and the Bibliothèque national du Québec cooperate fully in the exchange of bibliographic information to avoid duplication in the bibliographic description of French-language materials in particular.

Sent to: Dr. Guy Sylvestre, National Librarian
Monsieur Jean-Rémi Brault, Conservateur en chef
Bibliothèque nationale du Québec

THIS CONFERENCE recommends to the Canadian Library Association that the *Canadian Periodical Index* include in its coverage the leading Canadian feminist journals, most particularly: *Resources for Feminist Research* (Ontario Institute for Studies in Education): Atlantic (Acadia University); *Canadian Women's Studies* (Centennial College, Toronto).

Sent to: Canadian Library Association

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that classification schedules and subject indexing terminology for print and non-print materials be extensively examined and revised where necessary to ensure precise identification of materials relating to Women, and to facilitate the integration of Women's Studies into traditional subject areas.

Sent to: The National Library of Canada
The Bibliothèque nationale du Québec (which publishes RADAR)
Canadian Library Association (which publishes the *Canadian Periodical Index*)
Indexing and Abstracting Society of Canada
Canadian Education Association (which publishes the *Canadian Education Index*)
Micromedia Ltd. (which publishes several indexes)

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that the Provincial and Territorial Archives be asked to undertake the compilation of guides to materials pertinent to Native People and Native History for their respective provinces or territories.

Sent to: All Provincial or Territorial Archives
SSHRCC

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that the National Library of Canada be asked to undertake the publication of a union list of native serials held by Canadian libraries.

Sent to: Dr. Guy Sylvestre, National Librarian

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that the National Library of Canada be asked to undertake a survey of Native Studies materials in research libraries in Canada, and to publish the results in its series: "Research Collections in Canadian libraries."

Sent to: Dr. Guy Sylvestre, National Librarian

THIS CONFERENCE recommends to the Minister of Communications that the National Library of Canada be strengthened in its role as a national repository for all Canadian published materials regardless of format, and in particular that it be given sufficient resources of funds and personnel to ensure the collection and maintenance of all types of Canadian non-book materials.

Sent to: Minister of Communications
cc: Dr. Guy Sylvestre, National Librarian

THIS CONFERENCE applauds the work of the Academic Relations Division of the Department of External Affairs in promoting Canadian Studies abroad, and especially the Book and Periodical Distribution Programme which supports such studies. The Conference encourages an expansion of this vital programme, and especially urges a greater emphasis on the distribution of Canadian Studies bibliographies, finding aids and reference sources of all kinds – e.g., the *Dictionary of Canadian Biography.*

Sent to: Minister of External Affairs

TO IMPROVE the availability of Canadian Studies materials abroad, this Conference recommends that Canadian publishers' associations encourage their members to redouble their efforts to advertise and market Canadian publications abroad, and that the Federal Government consider mechanisms to help fundsuch increased efforts.

Sent to: Association of Canadian Publishers
Association of Canadian University Presses
Book and Periodical Development Council
Canadian Book Publishers' Council
Canadian Periodical Publishers' Association
Association des Editeurs canadiens
Association québécoise de Presses universitaires
Société de Développement du Livre et du Périodique
Association des éditeurs et périodiques culturels québécois
Canada Council (Naim Kattan, Director, Writing and Publication Section)
Department of Trade and Industry (Gordon E. Pallant, Chief,
Cultural Industries Division)

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that the National Library Advisory Board Committee on Bibliography and Information Services for the Social Sciences and Humanities examine, define and publicize the categories of bibliographies included in the inventory of bibliographical work in progress.

Received by the Committee

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that the CBISSSH pay special attention to the possibility of creating a National Women's Bibliographic Resource Project in order to identify and eliminate gaps in bibliographic coverage.

Received by the Committee

THIS CONFERENCE recommends that, because of their value and importance to Canadian Studies, the proceedings of the Conference be published as a separate publication, and that the support of the National Library be sought to enable the ACS/AEC to do this.

DR. GUY SYLVESTRE, the National Librarian,
was present when this recommendation was approved,
and agreed to support publication of the proceedings.

The Association for Canadian Studies
L'Association des Etudes Canadiennes
1750 Finch Avenue East
Willowdale, Ontario
Canada
M2J 2X5

POOR

QUALITY

ORIGINAL